Copyright © and Moral Rights for this thesis are retained by the author and/or other copyright owners. A copy can be downloaded for personal non-commercial research or study, without prior permission or charge. This thesis cannot be reproduced or quoted extensively from without first obtaining permission in writing from the copyright holder/s. The content must not be changed in any way or sold commercially in any format or medium without the formal permission of the copyright holders.

When referring to this work, full bibliographic details including the author, title, awarding institution and date of the thesis must be given e.g.

AUTHOR (year of submission) "Full thesis title", University of Southampton, name of the University School or Department, PhD Thesis, pagination

http://eprints.soton.ac.uk
ELECTROCHEMICAL SENSING OF AEROBIC MARINE BACTERIAL BIOFILMS AND THE INFLUENCE OF NITRIC OXIDE ATTACHMENT CONTROL

By
Stéphane Werwinski

Dstl contract of
“Sensor Actuated Smart Interfaces Incorporating Bio-Hybrid Materials (Biofilm Sensing)”

THESIS SUBMITTED FOR THE DEGREE OF
DOCTOR OF PHILOSOPHY
NOVEMBER 2010
An attractive alternative to ineffective and inefficient biocide dosing strategies for seawater piping systems would be to monitor, quantitatively evaluate and then induce biofilm disruption when necessary using an environmentally friendly biocide. The aim of the present Dstl and EPSRC funded project is to (i) sense for the presence of bacterial biofilms on metallic surfaces within seawater handling systems (e.g. heat exchangers, pipework, pumps and valves) by deploying a sensor technology to ultimately disrupt biofilms matrix and to (ii) qualitatively and quantitatively assess the extent of bacterial fouling.

An electrochemical sensor using a 0.2 mm diameter gold electrode was characterised in abiotic and biotic media within a modified continuous culture flow cell under a controlled laboratory environment. Herein, electrochemical measurements by imposing electrical cathodic polarisations have demonstrated enhancement of the oxygen reduction reaction within aerobic bacterial biofilms. Importantly, electrochemical impedance spectroscopy at open circuit potential, i.e. without electrical imposed polarisation, was successfully employed to monitor initial bacterial biofilms growth and extent. An important parameter of the sensor response (capacitive component) can provide insight into quantitative evaluation of the interface, where for the first time in situ quantifiable EIS data were in good agreement with ex situ confocal microscopy analyses. Consequently, a relationship for the surface charge density (capacitive component / estimated number of sessile bacterial population) has outlined its potential use for in-service conditions. Uniquely, the electrochemical performances of a 72 h-old biofilmed gold surface dosed with nanomolar concentration; 500 nM, of the nitric oxide donor sodium nitroprusside were presented. Corroborative confocal microscopy studies have revealed effective and efficient dispersal of aerobic bacterial biofilms exposed to nitric oxide.

Overall, this unique qualitative and quantitative bacterial biofilm investigation utilising a modified once through flow cell, i.e. combining microbiological and engineering expertise, represents an important first step in controlling of marine biofouling within seawater piping systems. Gold multi-microelectrode arrays located on likely biofouling positions within the seawater piping systems should be used for enhanced effectiveness of the biofilm sensing / disruption strategy.
# Table of contents

| Chapter 1 | Introduction | 1 |
| 1.1       | Project scope | 2 |
| 1.2       | Project outline | 3 |
| 1.3       | Thesis structure | 4 |

| Chapter 2 | Literature review | 5 |
| 2.1       | Marine biofouling: initiation by bacterial biofilms? | 7 |
| 2.2       | Marine bacterial biofouling: the background and context | 9 |
| 2.3       | Bacterial biofilm formation stages | 11 |
| 2.4       | Marine heat exchangers | 15 |
| 2.4.1     | Heat exchanger working principle | 15 |
| 2.4.2     | Copper-nickel alloys | 17 |
| 2.4.3     | Biocorrosion in heat exchangers | 21 |
| 2.4.3.1   | Uniform corrosion of the Cu matrix in seawater | 21 |
| 2.4.3.2   | MIC of Cu-based alloys in seawater | 23 |
| 2.4.3.3   | Significance of biocorrosion on Cu alloys for the current study | 31 |
| 2.4.4     | Biofouling within heat exchangers | 31 |
| 2.4.4.1   | Frictional resistance to fluid flow | 31 |
| 2.4.4.2   | Heat transfer resistance | 33 |
| 2.4.4.3   | Estimate of biofilm / biological film thickness ($\delta_b$) | 34 |
2.4.4.4 Characteristics of hydrodynamic and diffusion dependent systems
2.4.4.5 Momentum transfer: fluid shear force
2.4.4.6 Significance of the hydrodynamic conditions for the current study

2.5 Overview of bacterial biofilm analysis
2.6 Analytical detection techniques
2.6.1 Advantages of in situ microsensors
2.6.2 Fundamental requirements of microsensors
2.6.3 In situ microsensing corroborated using microscopy techniques
2.6.4 Review of sensor-based technology for biofilm sensing
2.6.4.1 Suitability of microsensors
2.6.4.2 Type of transduction-based sensor technology
2.6.4.3 Justification of the biofilm sensing strategy adopted
2.6.5 Biofilm sensing using EIS
2.6.5.1 An electrochemical technique for biofilm sensing
2.6.5.2 Analysis of the EIS response
2.6.5.3 Schematic of bacterial biofilm for electrochemical detection
2.6.6 Au working electrode
2.6.6.1 Suitability of Au as a candidate-working electrode
2.6.6.2 Preliminary concerns for Au prior testing
2.6.7 EC model at the Au / seawater interface

2.7 Biofilm microscopy techniques
2.7.1 Potential competitive microscopy techniques
2.7.2 Preferred microscopy methodology

2.8 Quantification of bacterial biofilm
2.8.1 Microscope image processing
2.8.2 Quantification using electrochemical techniques
2.8.2.1 Biofilm thickness assessment using the charge transfer resistance
2.8.2.2 Evaluation of bacterial sessile population using the interfacial capacitance
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2.8.3</td>
<td>Summary of the review of biofilm quantification</td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.9</td>
<td>Review of biofilm inhibition</td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter 3</td>
<td>Seawater environment</td>
<td>93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1</td>
<td>Physico-chemical properties of seawater</td>
<td>94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.1</td>
<td>Seawater chemical composition</td>
<td>94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.2</td>
<td>Physico-chemical properties of surface seawater</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2</td>
<td>Biological background</td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2.1</td>
<td>Biofilm and biological processes</td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2.2</td>
<td>Biological considerations for biofilm monitoring</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2.2.1</td>
<td>Environmental changes induced by bacterial metabolism</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2.2.2</td>
<td>Environmental stresses on biofilm growth and variability</td>
<td>99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2.3</td>
<td>Selection of marine bacterial species</td>
<td>105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2.3.1</td>
<td>General considerations for bacterial strain selection</td>
<td>106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2.3.2</td>
<td>Characteristics of <em>Pseudoalteromonas</em> sp. NCIMB 2021</td>
<td>108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2.4</td>
<td>Monitoring bacterial biofilms under controlled conditions</td>
<td>111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2.4.1</td>
<td>Experimental controllability: the background and context</td>
<td>111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2.4.2</td>
<td>Chemostats / flow culturing systems and flow cytometers</td>
<td>112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2.5</td>
<td>Summary of experimental controllability</td>
<td>116</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter 4</th>
<th>Experimental details</th>
<th>117</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4.1</td>
<td>Surface characterisation</td>
<td>118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.2</td>
<td>Specifications of the Au electrode</td>
<td>118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.3</td>
<td>Au surface preparation</td>
<td>119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.4</td>
<td>Test solutions</td>
<td>123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.4.1</td>
<td>Bio-chemical characteristics of the test media</td>
<td>123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.4.2</td>
<td>Physico-chemical properties of the test media</td>
<td>126</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.4.3</td>
<td>Summary of the test media analysis</td>
<td>129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.5</td>
<td><em>Pseudoalteromonas</em> sp. NCIMB 2021 strain growth characteristics</td>
<td>129</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
4.5.1 Sub-culture of *Pseudoalteromonas* sp. into solid agar media 129

4.5.2 *Pseudoalteromonas* sp. growth curve establishment 130

4.6 Flow cell arrangement 131

4.6.1 Flow cell channel design 132

4.6.2 Hydrodynamic regime 133

4.6.2.1 Flow cell dimensions 136

4.6.2.2 Flow regime and entrance length 136

4.6.2.3 Sherwood number 137

4.6.2.4 Wall shear stress and pressure drop 138

4.6.2.5 Residence time 140

4.6.2.6 Relevance of laminar and turbulent flow 141

4.6.3 Summary of the flow cell devices analysis 142

4.6.4 Watson-Marlow peristaltic pump 142

4.7 Electrochemical measurements 143

4.8 Experimental rig 144

4.9 Confocal microscopy characterisation 145

Chapter 5 Results and discussion 148

5.1 *Pseudoalteromonas* sp. NCIMB 2021 growth curve 149

5.2 Summary of the bacterial growth curve characterisation 152

5.3 Overview of the cyclic voltammograms 152

5.4 Characterisation of the Au electrode in 1 M sulphuric acid 153

5.5 Summary of the CV analysis for the 1 M sulphuric acid 154

5.6 CV for the NaCl solution 155

5.7 Summary of the CV analysis for the NaCl test condition 160

5.8 CV for the abiotic test condition 160

5.9 Summary of the CV analysis for the abiotic test condition 170

5.10 CV for the biotic test condition 172

5.11 Summary of electrochemical performance within abiotic and biotic ASW test media 174
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5.12</td>
<td>Qualitative analysis of the EIS data / confocal microscopy</td>
<td>175</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.12.1</td>
<td>EIS analysis of the NaCl test condition</td>
<td>176</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.12.2</td>
<td>EIS analysis of the abiotic test condition</td>
<td>180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.12.3</td>
<td>EIS analysis of the biotic test condition</td>
<td>185</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.12.4</td>
<td>EIS analysis of the NO donor SNP</td>
<td>190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.12.5</td>
<td>Surface percentage coverage</td>
<td>194</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.12.6</td>
<td>Estimation of the number of sessile bacterial cells</td>
<td>195</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.12.7</td>
<td>OCP values of the EIS data</td>
<td>197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.13</td>
<td>Quantitative analysis of the EIS measurements</td>
<td>199</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.13.1</td>
<td>Study of the capacitive parameters using imaginary impedance plots</td>
<td>199</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.13.2</td>
<td>EC fitting</td>
<td>202</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.13.2.1</td>
<td>EC fitting for the NaCl solution</td>
<td>206</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.13.2.2</td>
<td>EC fitting for the abiotic test solution</td>
<td>206</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.13.2.3</td>
<td>EC fitting for the biotic test solution</td>
<td>207</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.13.2.4</td>
<td>EC fitting for the NO donor SNP</td>
<td>207</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.13.2.5</td>
<td>Significance of the capacitive parameters</td>
<td>208</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.13.3</td>
<td>Relationship for the bacterial biofilm sensor</td>
<td>208</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.14</td>
<td>Summary of EIS analysis</td>
<td>211</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.1</td>
<td>Conclusions</td>
<td>214</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.1.1</td>
<td>Thesis overview</td>
<td>214</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.1.2</td>
<td>Main thesis thrusts</td>
<td>215</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.1.2.1</td>
<td>Summary of Chapter 1</td>
<td>215</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.1.2.2</td>
<td>Summary of Chapter 2</td>
<td>215</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.1.2.3</td>
<td>Summary of Chapter 3</td>
<td>216</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.1.2.4</td>
<td>Summary of Chapter 4</td>
<td>217</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.1.2.5</td>
<td>Summary of Chapter 5</td>
<td>218</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.1.3</td>
<td>Bacterial biofilm: a fascinating concept</td>
<td>222</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.2</td>
<td>Further work</td>
<td>224</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
6.2.1 Future studies born directly from this work 224
6.2.1.1 Sensor sensitivity 224
6.2.1.2 Sensing / operating system 225
6.2.2 Potential new routes for investigation 227
6.2.2.1 Bacterial biofilm system 227
6.2.2.2 Bio-inspired engineering systems 228

References 229
## List of Figures

| Figure 1.1 | Dstl project title interpretation. | 3 |
| Figure 2.1 | Bacterial biofouling: conditioning film formation. | 11 |
| Figure 2.2 | Bacterial biofouling: pioneering attachment, cell encapsulation. | 12 |
| Figure 2.3 | Bacterial biofouling: mature biofilm formation. | 13 |
| Figure 2.4 | Bacterial biofouling: partial biofilm sloughing. | 14 |
| Figure 2.5 | Bacterial biofouling: bacterial recolonisation. | 14 |
| Figure 2.6 | Closed cooling system for a marine engine. | 16 |
| Figure 2.7 | Corrosion in marine heat exchangers (e.g. Cu-based alloys): (a) grain boundaries in Cu matrix and (b) corrosion within the Cu matrix. | 21 |
| Figure 2.8 | The initial corrosion of Cu-based alloys and formation of the protective oxide film. | 22 |
| Figure 2.9 | Formation of Cu₂O via a potential number of processes. | 23 |
| Figure 2.10 | Establishment of a non-toxic top layer oxide, Cu₂(OH)₃Cl, on an inner (a) Cu₂O and (b) CuO films, (c) settlement of fouling organisms on the surface and (d) fouling organisms dispersal revealing the inner oxide layer, Cu₂O or CuO. | 25 |
| Figure 2.11 | Establishment of Cu surface coated with EPS matrix and redox processes involved. | 26 |
| Figure 2.12 | Schematic of three EET mechanisms for aerobic bacteria on a metallic surface: (a) direct electron transfer, (b) a reduced electron shuttle (Sh_red) that is oxidised (Sh_ox) and vice versa, and (c) a solid conductive matrix. | 27 |
| Figure 2.13 | Anodic reactions and species diffusion through the biofilm. | 29 |
| Figure 2.14 | Catalase mechanism involved in the cathodic reaction. | 30 |
| Figure 2.15 | Qualitative evolution of the Darcy frictional resistance to fluid in marine heat exchangers over a period of biofouling development. | 32 |
Figure 2.16  Evolution of the wall shear stress with the mean velocity in flowing seawater inside Cu-based alloys of different diameters.

Figure 2.17  Physical frequency dependent phenomena in electrochemistry.

Figure 2.18  Interpretations of Nyquist and Bode diagrams using EC models.

Figure 2.19  Bacterial biofilm colonisation: (a) a Ti surface immersed for 1 week in natural seawater at the NOC pontoon, (b) an overview of typical biofilm morphology and (c) processes detected by electrochemical measurements.

Figure 2.20  Schematic of the EC model for Au in a chloride medium.

Figure 2.21  Comparison of (a) CLSM and (b) multi-photon fluorescence optics.

Figure 2.22  Typical viability analysis responses for bacterial cells.

Figure 2.23  Chemical composition of SNP.

Figure 2.24  (a) The as-ground Ti surface. Seawater immersed: (b) silanised and glutaraldehyde treatment, (c) SR-FTIR spectra of bacterial EPS of the surface (b), (d) silanised / glutaraldehyde treatment plus SNP immobilisation – courtesy of Dr Wharton and Dr Webb, University of Southampton.

Figure 3.1  Average surface temperature, salinity, and density variation with latitude for all oceans.

Figure 3.2  Seasonal cycle in (phytoplankton) biomass for the North Atlantic.

Figure 3.3  Monthly mean (+Standard Deviation) ratio of depth-integrated total bacterial biomass (BB) and depth-integrated phytoplankton biomass (PB). Dashed line indicates unity.

Figure 3.4  State-of-the-art in marine biocorrosion.

Figure 3.5  Typical growth curve of a bacterial culture.

Figure 3.6  Schematic of a chemostat for marine applications.

Figure 4.1  Schematic of the 0.2 mm diameter Au electrode.

Figure 4.2  Optical microscopy image showing the 0.2 mm diameter Au electrode surface after grinding and polishing steps as detailed in Table 4.1. The scale was determined using a graticule, Tonbridge, Kent, England (100 x 0.01 mm).
Figure 4.3  (a) Surface optical profile showing the 0.2 mm diameter Au electrode surface with pronounced glass edge effects after grinding and polishing steps in Table 4.1 and (b) the root mean square roughness of the profile, $R_{\text{rms}} = 0.367 \, \mu\text{m}$.

Figure 4.4  (a) Surface optical profile showing the 0.2 mm diameter Au electrode surface with limited glass edge effects after grinding and polishing steps in Table 4.1 and (b) the root mean square roughness of the profile, $R_{\text{rms}} = 0.104 \, \mu\text{m}$.

Figure 4.5  Seawater DO concentration and temperature measured at the NOC site.

Figure 4.6  Schematic illustration of the flow cell electrode arrangement for EIS measurements.

Figure 4.7  Loss of pressure in a conical diffuser.

Figure 4.8  Plan view of the core plate showing the included angle, $\theta_k = 6 \, \text{deg}$.

Figure 4.9  Watson-Marlow series 323S peristaltic pump working principle.

Figure 4.10  Whole system for electrochemical testing under a controlled flow condition.

Figure 4.11  Modified flow cell device in sandwich configuration with an electrochemical sensor within the Faraday cage.

Figure 4.12  Leica TCS SP2 laser scanning microscope system.

Figure 5.1  Bacterial growth curve for Pseudoalteromonas sp. NCIMB 2021: (dashed line) cultured in the 250 mL batch culture and (solid line) established inside the flow channel.

Figure 5.2  Cyclic voltammogram for a 0.2 mm diameter Au electrode in N$_2$ deaerated 1 M H$_2$SO$_4$ at a scan rate of 0.200 V s$^{-1}$.

Figure 5.3  Schematic representation of the place-exchange reaction in a monolayer oxide formation.

Figure 5.4  Comparison of cyclic voltammograms for a 0.2 mm diameter Au electrode in N$_2$ deaerated (dashed line) and aerated (solid line) 3.5 % NaCl at a scan rate of 0.100 V s$^{-1}$.

Figure 5.5  Pourbaix diagram for an Au chloride-water system at 298 K with $a_{\text{Au}} = 10^{-3}$ and $a_{\text{Cl}} = 1$ (solid line), $a_{\text{Cl}} = 5$ (dashed line) where $a_i$ is the activity of species i.
Figure 5.6 First mechanism of Au dissolution: (a) initiation of corrosion within the Au matrix and formation of the $\text{AuCl}_2^-$ and $\text{AuCl}_4^-$ complex (b) yielding to $\text{Au(OH)}_3$.

Figure 5.7 Second mechanism of Au dissolution: (a) reaction of $\text{Au(OH)}_3$ with $\text{Cl}^-$ to form (b) $\text{AuCl(OH)}_2^-$ and subsequent (c) exchange of hydroxyl ligands resulting in the formation of the $\text{AuCl}_4^-$ complex.

Figure 5.8 Comparison of cyclic voltammograms for a 0.2 mm diameter Au electrode in $\text{N}_2$ deaerated (dashed line) and aerated (solid line) abiotic ASW at a scan rate of 0.100 V s$^{-1}$.

Figure 5.9 Comparison of cyclic voltammograms for a 0.2 mm diameter Au electrode in aerated (dashed line) 3.5% NaCl and (solid line) ASW medium at a scan rate of 0.100 V s$^{-1}$.

Figure 5.10 Comparison of cyclic voltammograms for a 0.2 mm diameter Au electrode in $\text{N}_2$ deaerated (dashed line) and aerated (solid line) control ASW at a scan rate of 0.100 V s$^{-1}$.

Figure 5.11 Comparison of cyclic voltammograms for a 0.2 mm diameter Au electrode in aerated control (dashed line) and abiotic (solid line) ASW at a scan rate of 0.100 V s$^{-1}$.

Figure 5.12 Methodology to determine anodic and cathodic peaks current density ($j_{pa}$ and $j_{pc}$) and peak potentials ($E_{pa}$ and $E_{pc}$) in the voltammograms for the control and abiotic ASW media – idealised plot to illustrate the curve analysis.

Figure 5.13 Plots of $|j_{pa}|$ and $|j_{pc}|$ vs. $\nu^{1/2}$ for the aerated control ASW.

Figure 5.14 Plots of $|j_{pa}|$ and $|j_{pc}|$ vs. $\nu^{1/2}$ for the aerated abiotic ASW.

Figure 5.15 Chemical composition of EDTA.

Figure 5.16 Plots of $E_{pa}$ and $E_{pc}$ vs. $\ln \nu$ for the aerated control ASW.

Figure 5.17 Comparison of cyclic voltammograms for a 0.2 mm diameter Au electrode in aerated (dashed line) abiotic and (solid line) biotic ASW medium after a 72 h immersion at a scan rate of 0.100 V s$^{-1}$.

Figure 5.18 Schematic representation of electron transfers pathway within a *Pseudoalteromonas* biofilm in analogy with biological fuel cell – typical thickness of the bacterial biofilm $\approx$ a few microns.

Figure 5.19 Bode ($|Z|$ vs. $f$) plots at OCP for a 0.2 mm diameter Au electrode in the 3.5% NaCl solution – OCP values: +0.090, −0.070, −0.215 and −0.225 V (vs. Ag/AgCl) after a 0, 4, 21 and 72 h immersion, respectively.
Figure 5.20 Bode ($-\theta$ vs. $f$) plots at OCP for a 0.2 mm diameter Au electrode in the 3.5 % NaCl solution – OCP values: +0.090, –0.070, –0.215 and –0.225 V (vs. Ag/AgCl) after a 0, 4, 21 and 72 h immersion, respectively.

Figure 5.21 Nyquist diagrams at OCP for a 0.2 mm diameter Au electrode in the 3.5 % NaCl solution – OCP values: +0.090, –0.070, –0.215 and –0.225 V (vs. Ag/AgCl) after a 0, 4, 21 and 72 h immersion, respectively.

Figure 5.22 Qualitative (a) Bode ($|Z|$ vs. $f$) and (b) Nyquist plots for a Au micro-electrode in N$_2$ (dashed line) and air (solid line) saturated, 3.5 % NaCl solution – idealised plot to illustrate the curve analysis.

Figure 5.23 Confocal microscopy of a Au electrode stained with the BacLight™ viability kit after a 72 h immersion in 3.5% NaCl: (a) Live, (b) Dead and (c) Live / Dead – corresponding binary (black and white) images in (a'), (b') and (c') using ImageJ software.

Figure 5.24 ORR mechanisms at the Au / NaCl interface – typical thickness of the double layer $\approx$ 0.5 nm.

Figure 5.25 Bode ($|Z|$ vs. $f$) plots at OCP for a 0.2 mm diameter Au electrode in the abiotic ASW medium – OCP values: +0.085, –0.070, –0.250 and –0.325 V (vs. Ag/AgCl) after a 0, 4, 21 and 72 h immersion, respectively.

Figure 5.26 Bode ($-\theta$ vs. $f$) plots at OCP for a 0.2 mm diameter Au electrode in the abiotic ASW medium – OCP values: +0.085, –0.070, –0.250 and –0.325 V (vs. Ag/AgCl) after a 0, 4, 21 and 72 h immersion, respectively.

Figure 5.27 Nyquist diagrams at OCP for a 0.2 mm diameter Au electrode in the abiotic ASW medium – OCP values: +0.085, –0.070, –0.250 and –0.325 V (vs. Ag/AgCl) after a 0, 4, 21 and 72 h immersion, respectively.

Figure 5.28 Confocal microscopy of a Au electrode stained with the BacLight™ viability kit after a 72 h immersion in abiotic ASW: (a) Live, (b) Dead and (c) Live / Dead – corresponding binary (black and white) images in (a'), (b') and (c') using ImageJ software.

Figure 5.29 ORR mechanisms at the Au / ASW interface for (a) a homogeneous and (b) a heterogeneous adsorbed organic layer – typical thickness of the conditioning film $\approx$ 6 – 10 nm.
Figure 5.30 Bode (|Z| vs. f) plots for a 0.2 mm diameter Au electrode in the biotic ASW medium (abiotic: −1 h before inoculation) – OCP values: +0.090, +0.085, −0.075, −0.460 and −0.560 V (vs. Ag/AgCl) at −1 h (abiotic) and after a 0, 4, 21 and 72 h immersion, respectively.

Figure 5.31 Bode (−θ vs. f) plots for a 0.2 mm diameter Au electrode in the biotic ASW medium (abiotic: −1 h before inoculation) – OCP values: +0.090, +0.085, −0.075, −0.460 and −0.560 V (vs. Ag/AgCl) at −1 h (abiotic) and after a 0, 4, 21 and 72 h immersion, respectively.

Figure 5.32 Nyquist diagrams for a 0.2 mm diameter Au electrode in the biotic ASW medium (abiotic: −1 h before inoculation) – OCP values: +0.090, +0.085, −0.075, −0.460 and −0.560 V (vs. Ag/AgCl) at −1 h (abiotic) and after a 0, 4, 21 and 72 h immersion, respectively.

Figure 5.33 Confocal microscopy of a Au electrode stained with the BacLight™ viability kit after a 72 h immersion in biotic ASW: (a) Live, (b) Dead and (c) Live / Dead – corresponding binary (black and white) images in (a'), (b') and (c') using ImageJ software.

Figure 5.34 (a) Confocal microscopy of a 72 h-old biofilmed Au electrode stained with the BacLight™ viability kit and (b) the corresponding cross section.

Figure 5.35 ORR enhancement mechanisms for the biotic condition – typical thickness of the bacterial biofilm ≈ a few microns.

Figure 5.36 Bode (|Z| vs. f) plots for a 0.2 mm diameter Au electrode with 500 nM NO donor SNP in ASW medium for 24 h (abiotic: −1 h before inoculation and biotic growth for 72 h) – OCP values: +0.080, −0.470, −0.470, −0.470 and −0.325 V (vs. Ag/AgCl) at −1 h (abiotic) and 72 h (biotic) after a 0, 1 and 24 h treatment with SNP, respectively.

Figure 5.37 Bode (−θ vs. f) plots for a 0.2 mm diameter Au electrode with 500 nM NO donor SNP in ASW medium for 24 h (abiotic: −1 h before inoculation and biotic growth for 72 h) – OCP values: +0.080, −0.470, −0.470, −0.470 and −0.325 V (vs. Ag/AgCl) at −1 h (abiotic) and 72 h (biotic) after a 0, 1 and 24 h treatment with SNP, respectively.

Figure 5.38 Nyquist diagrams for a 0.2 mm diameter Au electrode with 500 nM NO donor SNP in ASW medium for 24 h (abiotic: −1 h before inoculation and biotic growth for 72 h) – OCP values: +0.080, −0.470, −0.470, −0.470 and −0.325 V (vs. Ag/AgCl) at −1 h (abiotic) and 72 h (biotic) after a 0, 1 and 24 h treatment with SNP, respectively.
Figure 5.39  Confocal microscopy of a Au 72 h-old biofilmed electrode stained with the BacLight™ viability kit after a 24 h immersion using 500 nM of the NO donor SNP: (a) Live, (b) Dead and (c) Live / Dead – corresponding binary (black and white) images in (a'), (b') and (c') using ImageJ software.

Figure 5.40  Detachment mechanism induced by NO on a biofilmed Au surface: (1) diffusion of NO molecule across the interface and (2) subsequent biofilm dispersal – typical thickness of the bacterial biofilm ≈ a few microns.

Figure 5.41  Surface coverage analyses on Au electrodes using the Live / Dead BacLight™ viability kit after immersion in NaCl, abiotic and biotic ASW, and also SNP on biofilmed surfaces – * represents $P < 0.05$.

Figure 5.42  (a) Plan view of sessile bacterial cells on a Au matrix and (b) the corresponding cross section.

Figure 5.43  Comparison of the OCP values for the 3.5 % NaCl solution, the abiotic and biotic ASW media recorded over 72 h, and also after 24 h prolonged exposure with the NO donor SNP in the biotic ASW medium.

Figure 5.44  Representation of the logarithm of the –imaginary part vs. the logarithm of the frequency at OCP for a 0.2 mm diameter Au electrode in the 3.5 % NaCl solution – OCP values: +0.090, –0.070, –0.215 and –0.225 V (vs. Ag/AgCl) after a 0, 4, 21 and 72 h immersion, respectively.

Figure 5.45  Representation of the logarithm of the –imaginary part vs. the logarithm of the frequency at OCP for a 0.2 mm diameter Au electrode in the abiotic ASW medium – OCP values: +0.085, –0.070, –0.250 and –0.325 V (vs. Ag/AgCl) after a 0, 4, 21 and 72 h immersion, respectively.

Figure 5.46  Representation of the logarithm of the –imaginary part vs. the logarithm of the frequency at OCP for a 0.2 mm diameter Au electrode in the biotic ASW medium (abiotic: –1 h before inoculation) – OCP values: +0.090, +0.085, –0.075, –0.460 and –0.560 V (vs. Ag/AgCl) at –1 h (abiotic) and after a 0, 4, 21 and 72 h immersion, respectively.

Figure 5.47  Representation of the logarithm of the –imaginary part vs. the logarithm of the frequency at OCP for a 0.2 mm diameter Au electrode with 500 nM NO donor SNP in ASW medium for 24 h (abiotic: –1 h before inoculation and biotic growth for 72 h) – OCP values: +0.080, –0.470, –0.470, –0.470 and –0.325 V (vs. Ag/AgCl) at –1 h (abiotic) and 72 h (biotic) after a 0, 1 and 24 h treatment with SNP, respectively.
Figure 5.48  Number of sessile bacterial cells as a function of the surface charge density – data in the presence of * represent the estimations of number of attached bacterial cells (y-axis) using the ex situ confocal microscopy studies in **Table 5.9**, together with the bacterial cell population (data in the absence of *) deduced utilising the hypotheses in **Section 2.8.2.2**, corresponding to the experimental impedance data (x-axis) – surface coverage analyses ($P < 0.05$) in **Section 5.12.5** are shown for a direct comparison with the data in the presence of *.

Figure 6.1  Schematic of the physico-chemical and biological properties of a bacterial biofilm.
List of Tables

| Table 2.1  | Project keyword and phase classification. | 6 |
| Table 2.2  | Galvanic series in flowing seawater (conditions: 2.5 – 4.0 m s\(^{-1}\) and 10 – 25 °C, 1 atm) – Values in brackets indicate low velocity or poorly aerated water, and at shielded areas. | 20 |
| Table 2.3  | Biofilm research fields and analytical techniques. | 41 |
| Table 2.4  | Characteristics of microsensors of interest for bacterial biofilm sensing. | 47 |
| Table 2.5  | Sensing element area evolution over the last past decade with respect to worldwide research groups and biofilm sensing and analysis – list non-exhaustive. | 49 |
| Table 2.6  | Electrochemical series. Standard conditions (25 °C; 1 atm; H\(_2\)O; unit activities; metals present in their standard states). | 67 |

| Table 3.1  | Concentration of O\(_2\) at various temperatures and salinity levels. | 97 |
| Table 3.2  | Specification of bacterial strains. | 108 |

| Table 4.1  | Grinding and polishing method used for pure Au. | 119 |
| Table 4.2  | Composition of seawater: Riegman et al. – anhydrous (ANH) stands for a substance that contains no water. | 124 |
| Table 4.3  | Composition of the control ASW (see Figures 5.10 and 5.11 in Section 5.8) medium based on Riegman et al. | 125 |
| Table 4.4  | Biochemical characteristics of the test media. | 126 |
| Table 4.5  | Comparison of the physico-chemical properties of the media measured before testing (0 h). | 127 |
| Table 4.6  | Calculations of mean velocities at different (inlet / outlet) positions. | 133 |
| Table 4.7  | Comparison of the dimensions and theoretical hydrodynamic parameters of different flow cell configurations – calculations representative of the conditions VIII in Table 4.6 for a 35 ‰ seawater environment (\(\mu = 1.07 \times 10^{-3} \text{ kg m}^{-1} \text{ s}^{-1}\) and \(\nu_k = 1.05 \times 10^{-6} \text{ m}^2 \text{ s}^{-1}\) at 20 °C) – * is indicative of potential concerns for the flow cell dimensions and / or flow regime. | 134 |
Table 4.8  Values of $F(w'/b)$, $G(w'/b)$ and $f_oR_c$ as a function of the side ratio ($w'/b$) for a rectangular segment – * is indicative of estimated values computed using Equations 4.7 to 4.10 and included for comparison with Table 4.7.

Table 5.1  Calculations of biological parameters for the batch culture and flow cell system between $t_0 = 3$ h and $t = 24$ h.

Table 5.2  Summary of detectable electrochemical process at the Au / 1 M H$_2$SO$_4$ interface (Figure 5.2) for a potential range of 0.000 to +1.500 V (vs. Ag/AgCl).

Table 5.3  Summary of detectable electrochemical process at the Au / 3.5 % NaCl interface (Figure 5.4) for a potential range of −1.000 to +1.000 V (vs. Ag/AgCl).

Table 5.4  Summary of $Q_a$ values for the region ($A''$) in Figure 5.11 and the corresponding percentage surface coverage of adsorbed organic layers.

Table 5.5  Summary of $\Delta E_p$ values for the aerated control ASW at scan rates of 0.050, 0.100, 0.200 and 0.500 V s$^{-1}$.

Table 5.6  Summary of the transfer coefficient values for the aerated control ASW using Figure 5.16.

Table 5.7  Summary of detectable electrochemical process at the Au / abiotic ASW interface (Figure 5.8) for a potential range of −1.000 to +1.000 V (vs. Ag/AgCl).

Table 5.8  Summary of detectable electrochemical process at the Au / biotic ASW interface (Figure 5.17) for a potential range of −1.000 to +1.000 V (vs. Ag/AgCl).

Table 5.9  Numbers of attached bacterial cells for the biotic ASW (72 h-old biofilmed Au surface) and 500 nM SNP in ASW (24 h exposure).

Table 5.10  Impedance data for the Au / 3.5 % NaCl interface.

Table 5.11  Impedance data for the Au / abiotic ASW interface.

Table 5.12  Impedance data for the Au / biotic ASW interface (abiotic: −1 h before inoculation).

Table 5.13  Impedance data for the Au / biotic ASW interface after treatment with 500 nM of NO donor SNP (abiotic: −1 h before inoculation and biotic growth for 72 h).
Table 6.1 Summary of the experimental conditions for this current study. 214
Table 6.2 Proposed test matrix for the biocide / biocide-free antifouling dosing strategy. 226
## List of acronyms

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AAS</td>
<td>Atomic Absorption Spectroscopy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ads</td>
<td>Adsorbed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AFM</td>
<td>Atomic Force Microscopy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ag</td>
<td>Silver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AgCl</td>
<td>Silver Chloride</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Al</td>
<td>Aluminium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Al$_2$O$_3$</td>
<td>Alumina</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ANH</td>
<td>Anhydrous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ar</td>
<td>Argon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASW</td>
<td>Artificial Seawater</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ATP</td>
<td>Adenosine Triphosphate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ATR</td>
<td>Attenuated Total Reflectance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Au</td>
<td>Gold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BES</td>
<td>Bioelectrochemical System</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BGE</td>
<td>Bacterial Growth Efficiency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Element Carbon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ca$^{2+}$</td>
<td>Calcium ion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CE</td>
<td>Capillary Electrophoresis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cl$^-$</td>
<td>Chloride ion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CLEM</td>
<td>Correlative Light Electron Microscopy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CLSM</td>
<td>Confocal Laser Scanning Microscopy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CO$_2$</td>
<td>Carbon Dioxide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CPE</td>
<td>Constant Phase Element</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CTD</td>
<td>Conductivity-Temperature-Depth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cu</td>
<td>Copper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cu$^+$</td>
<td>Copper (I) ion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cu$^{2+}$</td>
<td>Copper (II) ion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CuCl</td>
<td>Cuprous Chloride</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CuCl$_2$$^-$</td>
<td>DichloroCuprous anion complex</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Cu-Ni  Copper-Nickel
CuO    Cupric Oxide
Cu₂O   Cuprous Oxide
CuOH   Copper (I) Hydroxide
Cu₂(OH)₃Cl Atacamite
Cu₂S(NiFe)₃S₄ Copper (I) sulphide-violarite complex
CV     Cyclic Voltammetry
dc     Direct-current
DGGE   Denaturing Gradient Gel Electrophoresis
DIC    Differential Interference Contrast
dis    Dissolution
dis’   Dissolution
DNA    Deoxyribo Nucleic Acid
DO     Dissolved Oxygen
Dstl   Defence Science and Technology Laboratory
DTM    Differential Turbidity Measurement
e⁻    Electron
EC     Equivalent Circuit
EDIC   Episcopic Differential Interference Contrast
EDS    Energy Dispersive X-ray Spectroscopy
EDTA   Ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid
EET    Extracellular Electron Transfer
EF     Epifluorescence
EIS    Electrochemical Impedance Spectroscopy
ELISA  Enzyme-Linked Immunosorbent Assay
EN     Electrochemical Noise
EPA    Environmental Protection Agency
EPS    Extracellular Polymeric Substance
EPSRC  Engineering and Physical Sciences Research Council
EQCM   Electrochemical Quartz Crystal Microbalance
EQUIVCRT Equivalent Circuit software
ESEM   Environmental Scanning Electron Microscopy
FACSort Fluorescence-Activated Cell Sorter
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Acronym</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>FCS</td>
<td>Fluorescence Correlation Spectroscopy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fe</td>
<td>Iron</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FFF</td>
<td>Field Flow Fractionation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FISH</td>
<td>Fluorescent In Situ Hybridisation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FLIM</td>
<td>Fluorescence Lifetime Imaging Microscopy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FRA</td>
<td>Frequency Response Analyser</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FRAP</td>
<td>Fluorescent Recovery After Photo-bleaching</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FRET</td>
<td>Förster Resonance Energy Transfer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FTIR</td>
<td>Fourier Transform Infrared</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GC</td>
<td>Gas Chromatography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GE</td>
<td>Gel Electrophoresis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GFP</td>
<td>Green Fluorescent Protein</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H⁺</td>
<td>Proton or Hydrogen ion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H₂</td>
<td>Hydrogen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H₂CO₃</td>
<td>Carbonic acid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H₂O</td>
<td>Water</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H₂O₂</td>
<td>Hydrogen Peroxide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HS⁻</td>
<td>Hydrogen Sulphide ion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H₂S</td>
<td>Hydrogen Sulphide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H₂SO₄</td>
<td>Sulphuric Acid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IFREMER</td>
<td>Institut Francais de Recherche pour l'Exploitation de la Mer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IR</td>
<td>Infrared Radiation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISA</td>
<td>Image Structure Analyser</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>K⁺</td>
<td>Potassium ion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KCl</td>
<td>Potassium Chloride</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kr</td>
<td>Krypton</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LC</td>
<td>Liquid Chromatography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LCS</td>
<td>Leica Confocal Software</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LSCM</td>
<td>Laser Scanning Confocal Microscopy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATLAB</td>
<td>MATtrix LABoratory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MFC</td>
<td>Microbial Fuel Cell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mg²⁺</td>
<td>Magnesium ion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MIC</td>
<td>Microbiologically Influenced Corrosion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abbreviation</td>
<td>Full Form</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MRI</td>
<td>Magnetic Resonance Imaging</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MSS</td>
<td>Mechatronic Surface Sensor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N</td>
<td>Element Nitrogen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N₂</td>
<td>Nitrogen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Na⁺</td>
<td>Sodium ion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NaCl</td>
<td>Sodium Chloride</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Na₂CO₃</td>
<td>Sodium Carbonate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NaHCO₃</td>
<td>Sodium Bicarbonate / Sodium Hydrogen Carbonate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nCATS</td>
<td>national Centre for Advanced Tribology, Southampton</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NCIMB</td>
<td>National Collection of Industrial, Marine and Food Bacteria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NEXAFS</td>
<td>Near-Edge X-ray Absorption Fine Structure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NH₄⁺</td>
<td>Ammonium ion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ni</td>
<td>Nickel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(NiFe)₃S₄</td>
<td>Violarite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NIH</td>
<td>National Institutes of Health</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NMR</td>
<td>Nuclear Magnetic Resonance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NO</td>
<td>Nitric Oxide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N₂O</td>
<td>Nitrous Oxide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NO₃⁻</td>
<td>Nitrate ion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOC</td>
<td>National Oceanography Centre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O₂</td>
<td>Oxygen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O₂⁻</td>
<td>Superoxide anion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OCP</td>
<td>Open Circuit Potential</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OCT</td>
<td>Optical Coherence Tomography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OH⁺</td>
<td>Hydroxyl radical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OH⁻</td>
<td>Hydroxyl ion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ORR</td>
<td>Oxygen Reduction Reaction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OTEC</td>
<td>Ocean Thermal Energy Conversion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P</td>
<td>Element Phosphorus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PCR</td>
<td>Polymerase Chain Reaction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PC</td>
<td>Polycarbonate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pd</td>
<td>Palladium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PEEK</td>
<td>Polyetheretherketone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acronym</td>
<td>Definition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PEMC</td>
<td>Piezoelectric-Excited Millimetre-sized Cantilever</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PFGE</td>
<td>Pulsed Field Gel Electrophoresis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PTFE</td>
<td>Polytetrafluoroethylene</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PhD</td>
<td>Doctor of Philosophy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHLIP</td>
<td>Phobia Laser scanning microscopy Imaging Processor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ppm</td>
<td>Parts Per Million</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pt</td>
<td>Platinum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PZC</td>
<td>Potential of Zero Charge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>QCM</td>
<td>Quartz Crystal Microbalance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RAPD</td>
<td>Random Amplified Polymorphic DNA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RDE</td>
<td>Rotating Disk Electrode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rh</td>
<td>Rhodium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RLC</td>
<td>Resistors, inductors, and capacitors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rms</td>
<td>Root Mean Square</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RNA</td>
<td>Ribonucleic Acid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RNS</td>
<td>Reactive Nitrogen Species</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RFLP</td>
<td>Restriction Fragment Length Polymorphism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RSNO</td>
<td>S-nitrosothiols</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$S^{2-}$</td>
<td>Sulphide ion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SAW</td>
<td>Surface Acoustic Wave</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SBS</td>
<td>School of Biological Sciences</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCLM</td>
<td>Scanning Confocal Laser Microscopy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SEC</td>
<td>Size Exclusion Chromatography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SECM</td>
<td>Scanning Electrochemical Microscopy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SEM</td>
<td>Scanning Electron Microscopy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SES</td>
<td>School of Engineering Sciences</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Si</td>
<td>Element Silicon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SICM</td>
<td>Scanning Ion Conductance Microscopy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SNP</td>
<td>Sodium Nitroprusside</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$SO_4^{2-}$</td>
<td>Sulfate ion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sol</td>
<td>Solution</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SR</td>
<td>Synchrotron Radiation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SRB</td>
<td>Sulphate Reducing Bacteria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abbreviation</td>
<td>Full Form</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SS</td>
<td>Stainless Steel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STED</td>
<td>Stimulated Emission Depletion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STXM</td>
<td>Scanning Transmission X-ray Microscopy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TBT</td>
<td>Tri-n-butyultin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TEM</td>
<td>Transmission Electron Microscopy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TRB</td>
<td>Thiosulphate Reducing Bacteria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ti</td>
<td>Titanium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UK</td>
<td>United Kingdom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UNS</td>
<td>Unified Numbering System</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UoS</td>
<td>University of Southampton</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>USA</td>
<td>United States of America</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UV</td>
<td>Ultra Violet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>w/v</td>
<td>Weight / volume percentage or percentage solution</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3D</td>
<td>Three-Dimensional</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Nomenclature

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Unit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>( A' )</td>
<td>Cross sectional area of the flow chamber</td>
<td>( m^2 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( a_i )</td>
<td>Activity of species ( i )</td>
<td>dimensionless</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( b )</td>
<td>Depth of the flow chamber</td>
<td>( m )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( c )</td>
<td>Concentration of a relevant species</td>
<td>( \text{mol cm}^{-3} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( C_{\text{ADS}} )</td>
<td>Capacitive component for adsorbed biological material and/or organic material (normalised)</td>
<td>( \text{F cm}^{-2} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( C_{\text{con}} )</td>
<td>Capacitance of the conditioning film (normalised)</td>
<td>( \text{F cm}^{-2} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( C_{\text{dl}} )</td>
<td>Double layer capacitance (normalised)</td>
<td>( \text{F cm}^{-2} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( C_{\text{eff}} )</td>
<td>Effective capacitance (normalised)</td>
<td>( \text{F cm}^{-2} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( C_{\text{EPS}} )</td>
<td>Capacitance of the EPS matrix (normalised)</td>
<td>( \text{F cm}^{-2} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( C_{\text{ref}} )</td>
<td>External reference capacitance (normalised)</td>
<td>( \text{F cm}^{-2} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( d )</td>
<td>Pipe diameter or diameter of the circular flow chamber</td>
<td>( m )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( D )</td>
<td>Diffusion coefficient of a species</td>
<td>( \text{m}^2 \text{s}^{-1} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( D_f )</td>
<td>Diffusion coefficient in the biofilm</td>
<td>( \text{m}^2 \text{s}^{-1} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( D_h )</td>
<td>Hydraulic diameter</td>
<td>( m )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( D_i )</td>
<td>Dilution rate</td>
<td>( \text{h}^{-1} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( E )</td>
<td>Potential measured at the interface (vs. Ag/AgCl, 3.5 M KCl)</td>
<td>( V )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( E' )</td>
<td>Formal potential of the electrode converted into potentials (( E ) vs. Ag/AgCl, 3.5 M KCl)</td>
<td>( V )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( E_p )</td>
<td>Peak potential (vs. Ag/AgCl, 3.5 M KCl)</td>
<td>( V )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( E_{pa} )</td>
<td>Anodic peak potential (vs. Ag/AgCl, 3.5 M KCl)</td>
<td>( V )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( E_{pc} )</td>
<td>Cathodic peak potential (vs. Ag/AgCl, 3.5 M KCl)</td>
<td>( V )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( E_r )</td>
<td>Reduction potential of the corresponding reaction converted into potentials (( E ) vs. Ag/AgCl, 3.5 M KCl)</td>
<td>( V )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( f )</td>
<td>Frequency</td>
<td>( \text{Hz} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( F )</td>
<td>Faraday constant</td>
<td>96,485 ( \text{C mol}^{-1} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( f_D )</td>
<td>Darcy frictional resistance to fluid</td>
<td>dimensionless</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( F(w'/b) )</td>
<td>Function used to calculate the pressure drop in Equation 4.6</td>
<td>dimensionless</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Geometric factor used to compute the Darcy frictional resistance to fluid in Equation 4.7

Overall heat transfer coefficient

Anodic current across an electrochemical interface

Cathodic current across an electrochemical interface

Faradaic current of the cathodic branch

Non-faradaic current of the cathodic branch

Observed current across an electrochemical interface

Imaginary number (Equation 2.26)

Current density (Equation 5.14)

Current density at the open circuit potential

Peak current density

Anodic peak current density

Cathodic peak current density

Standard heterogeneous rate constant

Loss coefficient

Coefficient for $F(w'/b)$ in Equation 4.10

Mass transfer coefficient

Reaction rate constant at step $\beta$ (I to IV) for order $n \geq 0$

Pipe length

Length of the flow chamber

Characteristic length

Entrance length through a rectangular cross-section

Empirical exponent of the CPE

Number of generations between $t_0$ and $t$

$P$-value

Flow rate

Anodic surface charge density

Surface charge density

Surface charge density for the abiotic condition

Surface charge density for the biotic condition

Microdisk electrode radius
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Definition</th>
<th>Units</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>( r^2 )</td>
<td>Square of the sample correlation coefficient</td>
<td>dimensionless</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( R )</td>
<td>Molar gas constant</td>
<td>8.3144 J K(^{-1}) mol(^{-1})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( R_s )</td>
<td>Surface roughness</td>
<td>( \mu m )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( R_{ct} )</td>
<td>Charge transfer resistance (normalised)</td>
<td>( \Omega ) cm(^{-2})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( R_e )</td>
<td>Reynolds number</td>
<td>dimensionless</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( R_f )</td>
<td>Film resistance (normalised)</td>
<td>( \Omega ) cm(^{-2})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( R_h )</td>
<td>Heat transfer resistance</td>
<td>m(^2) K W(^{-1})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( R_k )</td>
<td>Roughness Reynolds number</td>
<td>dimensionless</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( R_{rms} )</td>
<td>Root mean square roughness</td>
<td>( \mu m )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( R_s )</td>
<td>Solution resistance (normalised)</td>
<td>( \Omega ) cm(^{-2})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( t )</td>
<td>Time representative of the beginning of the stationary phase</td>
<td>h</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( T )</td>
<td>Temperature of the solution</td>
<td>K</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( t_{av} )</td>
<td>Average generation time</td>
<td>h</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( t_r )</td>
<td>Residence time</td>
<td>s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( t_0 )</td>
<td>Time representative of the beginning of the exponential growth</td>
<td>h</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( t_1 )</td>
<td>Time representative of 0.080 V (vs. Ag/AgCl) in Equation 5.14</td>
<td>s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( t_2 )</td>
<td>Time representative of 0.150 V (vs. Ag/AgCl) in Equation 5.14</td>
<td>s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( u )</td>
<td>Mean velocity</td>
<td>m s(^{-1})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( V )</td>
<td>Volume of solution</td>
<td>m(^3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( V_t )</td>
<td>Total volume inside the flow channel</td>
<td>m(^3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( x )</td>
<td>Cell density</td>
<td>cells mL(^{-1})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( x_t )</td>
<td>Cell density at ( t )</td>
<td>cells mL(^{-1})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( x_0 )</td>
<td>Cell density at ( t_0 )</td>
<td>cells mL(^{-1})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \omega )</td>
<td>Angular frequency</td>
<td>rad s(^{-1})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( w' )</td>
<td>Width of the flow chamber</td>
<td>m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( w'/b )</td>
<td>Side ratio of a straight rectangular channel</td>
<td>dimensionless</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( W' )</td>
<td>Wetted perimeter of the flow chamber cross-section</td>
<td>m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( Y_0 )</td>
<td>Admittance constant</td>
<td>( \Omega^{-1} ) cm(^{-2}) s(^n)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( z )</td>
<td>Number of electrons involved in an electrochemical reaction</td>
<td>dimensionless</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Symbol</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Unit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$Z_{\text{CPE}}$</td>
<td>Impedance of a CPE (normalised)</td>
<td>$\Omega$ cm$^{-2}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$Z_{W}$</td>
<td>Warburg impedance (normalised)</td>
<td>$\Omega$ cm$^{-2}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\alpha$</td>
<td>Transfer coefficient</td>
<td>dimensionless</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\alpha_a$</td>
<td>Anodic transfer coefficient</td>
<td>dimensionless</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\alpha_c$</td>
<td>Cathodic transfer coefficient</td>
<td>dimensionless</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\beta$</td>
<td>Step (I to IV) of the reaction rate constant $k_{\beta}$</td>
<td>dimensionless</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\Gamma_{\text{ADS}}$</td>
<td>Amount of adsorbed biological material and/or organic material (normalised)</td>
<td>mol cm$^{-2}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\delta_b$</td>
<td>Biofilm thickness</td>
<td>$\mu$m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\delta_d$</td>
<td>Diffusional/diffusion boundary layer thickness</td>
<td>$\mu$m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\delta_i$</td>
<td>Viscous sublayer thickness</td>
<td>$\mu$m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\delta_t$</td>
<td>Thermal boundary layer thickness</td>
<td>$\mu$m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\Delta E_p$</td>
<td>Peak potential separation (vs. Ag/AgCl, 3.5 M KCl)</td>
<td>V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\Delta P$</td>
<td>Pressure drop</td>
<td>Pa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\theta$</td>
<td>EIS phase angle (between the applied voltage and the induced current)</td>
<td>deg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\theta_k$</td>
<td>Included angle</td>
<td>deg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\lambda$</td>
<td>Wavelength</td>
<td>nm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\mu$</td>
<td>Dynamic viscosity</td>
<td>kg m$^{-1}$ s$^{-1}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\mu_b$</td>
<td>Specific growth of a bacterial species</td>
<td>h$^{-1}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\nu$</td>
<td>Scan rate</td>
<td>V s$^{-1}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\nu^{1/2}$</td>
<td>Square root of the scan rate</td>
<td>V$^{1/2}$ s$^{-1/2}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\nu_k$</td>
<td>Kinematic viscosity</td>
<td>m$^2$ s$^{-1}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\rho$</td>
<td>Density</td>
<td>kg m$^{-3}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\sigma$</td>
<td>Electrical conductivity</td>
<td>mS cm$^{-1}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\sigma_{c,\text{eff}}$</td>
<td>Measurement uncertainty for the $C_{\text{eff}}$ value</td>
<td>F cm$^{-2}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\sigma_{R_{\text{ct}}}$</td>
<td>Measurement uncertainty for the $R_{\text{ct}}$ value</td>
<td>$\Omega$ cm$^{-2}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\sigma_{Y_0}$</td>
<td>Measurement uncertainty for the $Y_0$ value</td>
<td>$\Omega^{-1}$ cm$^{-2}$ s$^{n}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\tau$</td>
<td>Shear stress</td>
<td>Pa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\tau_w$</td>
<td>Average wall shear stress</td>
<td>Pa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\chi^2$</td>
<td>Error for equivalent circuit best-fit</td>
<td>dimensionless</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
I, Stéphane Werwinski, declare that the thesis entitled “Electrochemical Sensing Of Aerobic Marine Bacterial Biofilms And The Influence Of Nitric Oxide Attachment Control” is an account of the work carried out by me as part of the national Centre for Advanced Tribology, Southampton (nCATS), School of Engineering Sciences, University of Southampton, UK.

The work presented in this thesis is my own, and has been generated by me as the result of my own original research. I confirm that:

- this work was done wholly or mainly while in candidature for a research degree at this University;
- where any part of this thesis has previously been submitted for a degree or any other qualification at this University or any other institution, this has been clearly stated;
- where I have consulted the published work of others, this is always clearly attributed;
- where I have quoted from the work of others, the source is always given. With the exception of such quotations, this thesis is entirely my own work;
- I have acknowledged all main sources of help;
- where the thesis is based on work done by myself jointly with others, I have made clear exactly what was done by others and what I have contributed myself;
- parts of this work have been published as:
Journal publication


Conference publications


- The 216th Electrochemical Society Meeting, Vienna, Austria, 4 – 9 October, 2009.
- The XXth International Symposium on Bioelectrochemistry and Bioenergetics, the Bioelectrochemical Society Meeting, Sibiu, Romania, 10 – 14 May, 2009.

Poster


Signed: Stéphane Werwinski

Date: 6th November 2010
Acknowledgements

When embarking on a PhD, i.e. what I describe as a ‘mental marathon’, I would have never imagined (good grief now I can realise!) the long period of thinking and persistence required to achieve my own modest contribution to the science. On the top of that, differences in approach along with the barrier language between UK and France were somewhat challenging. Overall, I am extremely delighted the way things turned out.

First at all, I would like to thank especially my principal supervisor Dr Julian Wharton for his guidance, persistence and endless support throughout this PhD project. I personally recommend Dr Wharton for his excellent supervision, experience on engineering projects and for his scientific skills.

I would like to express my gratitude to my charismatic supervisor Prof Robert Wood, director of the national Centre for Advanced Tribology, Southampton (nCATS), to whom I have great admiration for his willingness to buildup a cohesive and highly qualified research group, for his wise words, intellect, and also passion for research.

Funding from the Defence Science and Technology Laboratory (Dstl) and the Engineering and Physical Sciences Research Council (EPSRC) are gratefully acknowledged. In particular, I would like to express my appreciation to my industrial supervisors; the enthusiastic Prof Keith Stokes and Prof Richard Jones (Dstl) for their guidance and financial support for the project.

My special thanks to my advisor Dr Debora Iglesias-Rodriguez for her enthusiasm, endless energy, advice, encouragement and willingness to share laboratory facilities at the National Oceanography Centre (NOC), Southampton. Likewise, I am grateful to Dr John Gittins and Mr Ross Holland from the NOC for the technical support and advice on the bacteria culture protocol and the marine flow cytometry.

Funding from the Defence Science and Technology Laboratory (Dstl) and the Engineering and Physical Sciences Research Council (EPSRC) are gratefully acknowledged. In particular, I would like to express my appreciation to my industrial supervisors; the enthusiastic Prof Keith Stokes and Prof Richard Jones (Dstl) for their guidance and financial support for the project.

I am also very appreciative to Dr Mengyan Nie (nCATS) and Dr Guy Denuault from the School of Chemistry, University of Southampton (UoS) for the discussions on electrochemistry. Similarly, I must not forget Dr Paul Stoodley (nCATS) for his invaluable technical support and advice on my confocal microscopy images.

I wish to thank Dr Hans Schuppe from the School of Biological Sciences (SBS), UoS for his technical support and expertise on the confocal microscopy technique. In addition, thank you to Dr Jeremy Webb and Prof Bill Keevil from the SBS, UoS for the discussions on flow cell devices, chemostats and fluorescence microscopy. Also, thanks to Dr Claire Hellio from the SBS, University of Portsmouth for the discussions on biofouling.

I would like to acknowledge the work done by members of staff at the University of Southampton and in particular: Miss Sue Berger, Mrs Alessia Plutino, Mrs Dawn Attree, Mrs Sonya Manton, Mrs Gwyneth Skiller, Mrs Julia Zimbler, Mr Robert Barnes, Mr Chris Williams, Mr Steve Pilcher, Mr Erik Roszkowiak and Mr David Brennan.

I am particularly grateful to all my PhD mates from Room 4061 with whom I tried to keep my mental health in a safe state (Dr Shiva Rajahram, Dr Lily Chambers, Dr Ramkumar Penchaliah and Dr James Booth). Special thanks to the Tribology UK V Organising Committee (Dr Dan Sun, Dr Jennifer Ang, Dr Mark Craig, Dr Fitri Ismail, Dr Nick Chen, Mr Apostolos Patatoukas and once again Dr Shiva Rajahram) I had the
pleasure to chair and to my friends, nice and / or interesting people I met at Southampton, in particular: Dr Cédric Floquet and Dr Peggy Courtois (thanks for offering me free accommodation for more than two weeks during the final stage of my writing-up), Dr David Barat, Mr Sylvain Boyer, Dr Alex Dickinson, Mr Robert Hanzal, Dr Guillaume Charria, Miss Maria Salta, Dr Peter Glynne-Jones, Dr Laure Grignon, Dr Mandar Thakare, Dr Manuela Hartmann, Mr Guillaume Monin, Dr Aude Bouchier, Dr Gaelle Delaizir, Dr Mamadou Bah, Dr Georges Limbert, Dr Rakesh Barik, Miss Jonee Zunega, Dr Takamasa Tsubouchi, Dr Terry Harvey (thanks for kindly processing my Agresso forms and driving me down to NOC), Dr Simon Dennington, Mr Liam Goodes, Dr Martin Brown, Dr Jurgita Zekonyte, Dr John Walker, Dr Ilaria Corni, Dr Bethan Jones, Prof Frank Walsh (thanks for the relevant feedback used to support this thesis), Prof Mark Spearing (thanks for asking challenging questions), etc...

Thank you to the Southampton Aikikai (Dr Alex Megann, Dr Jim Anderson, Dr Adam Blaker, Mr Robert Lemmen, Mr Karl Baverstock among many others) for sharing with me my passion: aikido. In particular, thanks to my Senseis, Alex Megann and Jim Anderson, for teaching me the concept of ‘a maximum effect for a minimum effort’, how to relax my shoulders (too much typing) and extend my uke (more amplitude).

Last but not the least, I wish to thank my parents for their love, support and patience. The extent of their contribution to materialise this thesis cannot be expressed in a few words, thus this work is dedicated to my family.

In loving memory of my grandmothers, mémé Rolande and mémé Marie

‘It doesn’t matter how beautiful your theory is, it doesn’t matter how smart you are. If it doesn’t agree with experiment, it’s wrong.’ Richard P. Feynman
Chapter 1 – Introduction
1.1. Project scope

Marine bacteria are ubiquitous and are usually reported to be the primary colonisers on metallic surfaces in seawater handling systems, e.g. copper (Cu) alloys, titanium (Ti), and play a pivotal role in the initial microbial biofilm development, and also the maintenance of a biofouling community [1.1]. The engineering issues of this troublesome phenomenon in naval applications and in merchant shipping are numerous and can cause excessive capital costs, e.g. material costs associated with the replacing header castings alone are in excess of £100k each and heat exchanger fouling alone costs the UK up to £300 – 500 million per annum [1.2,1.3]. To combine reasonable expenses and higher operational availability, ship owners need enhanced preventive maintenance schedule of marine platforms [1.2,1.4].

Biofilms and fouling within seawater handling systems can affect the hydrodynamic properties (surface frictional resistance and cause flow restrictions) and reduce heat transfer performance of operating marine heat exchangers leading to frequent failures and blockages of components [1.2,1.5,1.6]. In addition, marine organisms can interact with metallic surfaces and be involved in corrosion pathways through biocorrosion mechanisms [1.2,1.7]. Although the problems of biofouling in marine heat exchangers are abundant, reliable and accurate techniques capable of sensing for the presence and extent of biofilms on metallic surfaces are still required [1.2,1.8]. Also, the proposed interfacial process / mechanism attributed to aerobic biofilm action to enzymatic processes needs to be better understood [1.9].

Biofilm inhibition strategies based on biocides for killing organisms are often ineffective, inefficient and costly. In this instance, effective cleaning is usually not achieved and dead organisms can be substantial biomass for further biofouling formation and extent [1.2]. In addition, the environmental impact is becoming important since the use of biocides is being restricted due to increased ecological concerns and legislature [1.1,1.2]. For instance, biocides for seawater piping systems such as chlorine, hypochlorite and chloride dioxide can react with the biomass to produce toxic by-products, which will eventually be discharged from the outflows of the marine systems. It has also been reported that biocides may lead to the buildup of microorganism resistance [1.2]. As a consequence, there is an increasing focus on both smart sensing surfaces and early warning systems that can quantitatively evaluate the metal / seawater interface and provide information of the extent of biofouling in order to establish a suitable and effective biocide dosing strategy.
1.2. Project outline

This thesis will focus on these two key areas: bacterial biofilm sensing and disruption, where the ultimate long-term objective would be to link new robust sensor technology with novel biofilm control to produce smart surfaces that are capable of a quantitative evaluation of the interface. This investigation has drawn on and strengthened existing collaborations at the University of Southampton (UoS) between the national Centre for Advanced Tribology, Southampton (nCATS) within the School of Engineering Sciences (SES), and with other research groups within the School of Biological Sciences (SBS) and the National Oceanography Centre (NOC).

Figure 1.1. Dstl project title interpretation.
As outlined in Figure 1.1, three distinguishable project components have been identified for the ultimate goal of this Dstl funded project:

- “Sensor (Biofilm sensing)” refers to the detection of bacterial biofilms using a sensor technology [1.2], which excludes conventional biological techniques relying on sampling of defined surface areas or on exposure of test surfaces, i.e. coupons with subsequent time lag between laboratory analyses and results [1.2].
- “actuated smart interfaces” means an integrated structure similar to a transducer [1.10,1.11] that will respond to the sensor signal aiming to quantify the extent of bacterial biofilm and disrupt its integrity.
- “incorporating bio-hybrid materials” (bio-hybrid materials are often utilised for therapeutic devices and are based on a variety of natural biological recognition elements [1.12]) in this instance would refer to the capability of using biofilm precursor chemicals and biochemicals in an engineered application for quantitative evaluation of disruption [1.13-1.15].

1.3. Thesis structure

This thesis aims to sense for the presence of marine biofilm in the field and ultimately clean marine piping systems using an engineering approach. To define the strategy that will support the thesis objectives, a detailed literature review on marine biofouling in nature and within operating marine heat exchangers, biofilm sensing, microscopic and inhibition techniques is addressed in Chapter 2. The physico-chemical properties of seawater and the biological background are presented in Chapter 3. Chapter 4 concerns the experimental details used to support the results and discussion in Chapter 5. Finally, Chapter 6 highlights the main conclusions of this thesis and it summarises the potential key routes that may assist in defining a work programme in the future (further work).
Chapter 2 – Literature review
A broad literature review of biofilm sensing and inhibition has been undertaken to define a combined marine bacterial biofilm sensing / disruption strategy for marine piping systems. The starting point was to address a fundamental understanding of overall marine biofouling, bacterial biofilm growth rates and extent on metallic surfaces. To diagnose biofouling in-service, marine heat exchangers represent the overall engineering systems for the thesis, where metallic surfaces are directly exposed to seawater and thus subject to biofouling. Then, biofilm sensing, microscopic and inhibition techniques were presented with an emphasis on the key aspects that have supported the chosen engineering approach. Likewise, marine environmental concerns and legislature are of crucial importance. Thus, Table 2.1 represents the keyword summary that has assisted in defining the search strategy for the literature review.

**Table 2.1.** Project keyword and phase classification.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>System</th>
<th>Sensor for marine piping systems, where metallic surfaces are directly exposed to seawater</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Aim</strong></td>
<td>Detect bacterial biofilm growth and extent onto sensor surface</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disrupt biofouling by complying to marine environmental terms and legislature</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Give quantitative information on biofilm formation and development, and also its disruption</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Characteristics</strong></td>
<td><em>In situ (i.e. detect and disrupt exactly in place where it occurs)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Smart</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Real time</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Easy to use</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sensitive</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rapid time response</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Application</strong></td>
<td>Marine biotechnology applications</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Target</strong></td>
<td>Marine, aquatic bacterial cells / biofilms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Scale</strong></td>
<td>Laboratory (short-term)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In-service (long-term)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cost</strong></td>
<td>Affordable price – facile supply of component materials and scale-up</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Metallic surfaces used for marine applications (e.g. heat exchangers, offshore structures, condenser tubes or pipelines) can undergo a series of undesirable accumulation of microorganisms, algae and animals in a process termed marine biofouling [2.1-2.4].
In addition, competing formation of non-biological deposits can occur on metallic surfaces:

- corrosion (e.g. corrosion product deposits),
- precipitation or scaling / chalking, e.g. deposition of inorganic material such as calcareous deposits: calcium carbonates, magnesium hydroxides and products of chemical reactions,
- particulate, e.g. deposition of organic material such as oil, humic substances, proteins, detritus, silica, clay and other suspended particles.

Marine biofouling is often divided into micro and macrofouling stages. Microfouling refers to a microbial colonisation step and subsequent developments of microorganisms, for instance bacteria, microalgae, phytoplanktons, unicellular fungi and protozoa on a metallic surface. On the other hand, macrofouling represents a biofouling stage where macroorganisms, such as macroalgae, sponges, barnacles, mussels, tubeworms and other animals settle on the colonised surface [2.1,2.2,2.4].

2.1 Marine biofouling: initiation by bacterial biofilms?

Although there is still much debate on the exact sequence of biofouling formation on metallic surfaces, it is often reported that the microbial adhesion precedes the macrofouling stage [2.1,2.4]. Many published articles even suggest that bacteria (within the microbial fouling) are the primary colonisers of a metallic surface (especially in heat exchangers [2.5]) and play a pivotal role in the initial biofilm development and the maintenance of a biofouling community [2.1,2.6,2.7]. For instance, the development of a bacterial microfilm, i.e. bacterial biofilm from *Pseudoalteromonas* (*Pseudomonas* for the ex-taxonomic name) sp. S9, on the inner walls of heat exchangers can initiate the settlement of *Ciona intestinalis* larvae [2.7,2.8]. In addition, the development of modern analysis methods, in particular confocal laser scanning microscopy (CLSM), has resulted in the appreciation that biofilms are highly heterogeneous, three-dimensional (3D) structures that contain complex communities of bacteria in an extracellular polymeric substance (EPS) matrix [2.9,2.10].
These previous considerations have led marine scientists to study the interaction between bacteria and metallic surfaces. To date, neither the strains of bacterial biofilms that facilitate the settlement of invertebrate larvae nor the signals inducing this settlement have been characterised and identified in great details [2.7]. Also, most of the studies have focused on bacterial adhesion and the nature of the EPS supporting that polysaccharides can act as adhesives for cells. However, the nature of these adhesives and their interactions with metallic surfaces remains an open question [2.4]. The challenge is still to fully understand the influence of the bacterial metabolism on the corrosion rate of metals, a research area defined as biocorrosion or microbiologically influenced corrosion (MIC), i.e. referring to corrosion of metals caused by biological organisms or microbes [2.11,2.12]. These microbes are categorised by common characteristics such as their by-products, the EPS matrix or compounds they affect, e.g. sulphur oxidising. The microbes can be classified into one of two groups based upon their oxygen (O\textsubscript{2}) requirements: aerobic, which require O\textsubscript{2}, such as sulphur oxidising bacteria; and anaerobic, requiring little or no O\textsubscript{2}, such as sulphate reducing bacteria (SRB). The most studied case of MIC has been attributed to anaerobic bacteria on metallic surfaces, i.e. the corrosion of mild steel caused by SRB [2.1,2.3]. However, this mechanism of MIC is closely related to the type of microorganisms active in the biofilm (i.e. SRB) and to their metabolic reactions. Overall, mechanisms of MIC that depend on the physiology of sessile microbes are specific. Consequently, this consideration and similar approaches, which aim to establish non-universal mechanisms of MIC, may be inappropriate in a more complex environment with biofilms in the field (aerobic species). According to the published literature [2.1,2.2,2.4,2.6-2.8,2.13], marine bacteria are the most likely species to initiate and develop biofouling and biocorrosion on metallic surfaces.
2.2 Marine bacterial biofouling: the background and context

Marine bacterial biofilms are reported to form and develop on any exposed metallic surfaces, e.g. offshore platforms, naval and commercial vessels, and also submerged structures in seawater [2.1,2.4,2.5,2.14]. However, a general understanding of this troublesome phenomenon – precursor in the attachment of macrofouling organisms, and its control in seawater systems is scarce [2.4,2.7,2.15]. Consequently, it is increasingly essential to establish a detailed knowledge of the mechanisms that govern the interaction of bacterial biofilms and marine metallic surfaces. This will help to avoid the damaging degradation caused by biofouling and biocorrosion to ensure the operational effectiveness of many marine systems.

There are numerous reports detailing the important role played by the initial bacterial settlement, both on the onset and propagation of localised corrosion and on the enhancement of galvanic corrosion of less noble material [2.2,2.16,2.17]. MIC can also cause serious corrosion damage, which is often associated with metal rupture in pipelines, water tanks and many other industrial systems [2.18]. In addition, frequent failures due to biofouling are attributed to the reduction in heat exchanger performance (caused by the insulating nature of the biofilm), fluid impediment and blockages of fluid-handling components – pumps, filters, valves and condensers [2.3,2.19]. Thus, reliable and accurate techniques capable of sensing for the presence of bacterial biofilm and extent on metallic surfaces are required for marine systems, e.g. submarines, ships, docks and jetties.

Classical microbiological methods commonly used to detect and characterise bacterial biofilms, e.g. the Robbin device consisting in plugs inserted into pipe walls in order to experience similar shear stress as the wall itself, are typically based on ex situ measurements (requiring sample removal and identification) [2.20]. These techniques can potentially affect field bacterial biofilms and involve time-lag between analyses and results, and are, as a consequence, not appropriate for in situ sensing (to detect exactly in place where biofilm forms and develops). Similarly, biofilm inhibition strategies based on biocides are often neither appropriate nor a completely acceptable option for marine piping systems as biofilms can develop resistance to biocides [2.3,2.21,2.22]. This results from the biofilm capability (due to the development of 3D structures intrinsic to biofilms) of using an adaptive response for survival to changing environment, and also the failure of the most popular biocide (i.e. chlorine) to penetrate into deep biofilm layers for enhanced disruption efficiency [2.3,2.23]. These features of
biofilms make them particularly difficult to control and current treatment strategies involve large biocide quantities, which are often undesirable because they are expensive, have a short half-life and present additional downstream problems, such as corrosion and by-product accumulation.

Consequently, marine structures frequently lose their operational performance and laborious maintenance procedures are required [2.18]. For instance, docking and materials associated with the removal of macrofouling, e.g. submarine heat exchangers, headers and the corrosion of Cu alloy piping through the generation of sulphides by microfouling, is both high and repetitive. Increased costs are also incurred by component inaccessibility, which is especially true for submarine systems [2.1,2.13]. The environmental impact represents also a major issue, for instance, heat exchanger biocides, e.g. chlorine, chloride dioxide and hypochlorite, can make nutrients more bioavailable and produce toxic by-products that can interact with the process fluid of seawater systems [2.3,2.18,2.21]. As a result, there is currently considerable concern worldwide over the potential loss of marine biodiversity due to the contamination by toxic substances, which include chlorine-based biocides, plus organotin compounds, such as tri-n-butyultin (TBT) and Cu-based compounds [2.24,2.25]. Indeed, in any engineering field involving bacterial biofilm formation and extent, the need to effectively control this serious phenomenon is becoming increasing paramount, as the more traditional means of control are being restricted due to the increased environmental concerns and legislature. As a consequence, there the focus has been placed on the protection of the marine environment and the development of new antifouling agents / strategies that are not only effective and but also environmentally benign. Bacterial biofilm control by disrupting the cohesiveness of the biofilm matrix using naturally occurring compounds, e.g. biochemicals or even predator species, is an attractive alternative [2.26].
2.3 Bacterial biofilm formation stages

Qualitative assessments of marine biofouling processes on metallic surfaces have been described in the literature \[2.1,2.2,2.23,2.25\]. Nevertheless, there is still much debate since understanding the interaction between metallic surfaces and biofilm remains a significant scientific challenge, see Section 2.1. Figures 2.1 to 2.5 present the classic and simplistic biofilm formation stages by bacterial microfoulers. This successional description of the fouling process is didactic and more complex patterns with other microfoulers such as, diatom biofilms and macrofouler, e.g. macroalgae, barnacles, mussels, tubeworms and bryozoans, can also interact with time on metallic surfaces in nature \[2.4\]. From an engineering perspective, a timescale has been taken into consideration in order to qualitatively assess the extent of bacterial biofouling formation with time. However, this concept is still the subject of much discussion within the biological science research community since it depends on numerous interrelated parameters, such as the bacterial growth rate, which can be regulated by several factors including physical and chemical parameters: salinity, temperature, turbidity, nutrient levels, flow rates or actions of the waves on the metallic surfaces and the intensity of solar radiation. These factors can also vary seasonally, spatially and with depth \[2.1,2.4,2.23\].

Figure 2.1. Bacterial biofouling: conditioning film formation.
Bacteria can modify their immediate environment by forming EPS, also referred to in the literature as slime, mucilage or glycocalyx [2.23] and, in seawater this varies broadly depending on temperature, degree of pollution and availability of organic matter [2.13]. After the initial molecular fouling or conditioning layer, which is a thin layer of adsorbed organic matter (polysaccharides, proteins, humic acids, nucleic and amino acids) that serves as a nutrient source (see Figure 2.1) [2.27], the EPS is generally reported to form within minutes to one hour (see Figure 2.2) which develops and grows into a mature biofilm (see Figure 2.3). However, the extent, the composition and physiology of bacterial populations, and also timescales of biofilm aggregation will ultimately depend on the environmental conditions nearby the metals and overall on the location and season [2.1,2.4,2.25,2.28,2.29].

![Figure 2.2. Bacterial biofouling: pioneering attachment, cell encapsulation.](image)

Planktonic bacterial cells attach onto the conditioning film in a heterogeneous manner, see Figure 2.2. At this stage, they become sessile bacteria by producing adhesive exopolymers (i.e. EPS) to physically bind to the surface. In field biofilms, primary colonisers such as, yeasts and diatoms can compete with bacteria to establish more complex protective biofilm structures [2.4].
These sessile bacteria then form microbial clusters as a consortia and replicate, see Figure 2.3. The EPS, or slime, is composed of polysaccharides, enzymes and water where the slime volume can be 100 times higher than the bacteria volume. The matrix is a complex structure with planktonic bacteria, non-living particles and nutrients. Mature biofilms in seawater may form in a few days on passive metals on account of simultaneous inorganic processes (oxide layer formation) occurring within the same time period, e.g. between 3 – 7 days reported for biofilms to form on stainless steel (SS) UNS S31600 and UNS S30400 surfaces [2.30,2.31].
With time, areas of the biofilm may slough away from the surface exposing these localised bare surfaces to the bulk fluid, see Figure 2.4. This process of biofilm dispersal is directly correlated to natural dispersion mechanisms (not well understood) for potential inhibition strategies discussed later in Section 2.9. This step of the bacterial biofouling process is of major importance since the ultimate objective of this thesis is to enhance this mechanism.
Finally, the freshly exposed surface can be recolonised by pioneering planktonic bacteria, see Figure 2.5 (similar to Figure 2.2). Thus, the process of bacteria biofilm formation is a continuous and dynamic process [2.1]. In nature, secondary colonisers, spores of macroalgae, fungi and protozoa, can settle with time after a 1 week immersion during favourable environmental conditions. After prolonged exposure, about 2 – 3 weeks, invertebrate larvae are usually reported to complete the marine biofouling process during the spawning season [2.4].

2.4 Marine heat exchangers

2.4.1 Heat exchanger working principle

Marine diesel engines are cooled by circulating coolant / seawater through the engine [2.32], see Figure 2.6. Two different types of cooling systems are commonly used in these engines: the standard seawater cooling system and the closed cooling system [2.33-2.35]. The former is a simple system where a seawater pump can be housed in a number of different locations depending on engine type and size. Traditionally, in most cases, the pump is inside the outdrive or inside the boat and driven by a V-belt or directly off the crankshaft for larger and inboard engines [2.33-2.35]. While for the latter, the closed cooling systems have more complex configurations which may include heat exchangers to give greater engine performance and reduce fuel consumption [2.32]. Heat exchanger devices ensure efficient heat transfer from one fluid to another and usually operate in the temperature range 28 – 45 °C for auxiliary cooling systems and 60 – 70 °C for condenser cooling [2.3]. Typical shell and tube marine heat exchangers have an external jacket / casing of about 250 mm in diameter and are composed of a bundle of 15 – 30 mm diameter internal tubes [2.33-2.35]. Surprisingly, bacterial biofilms have been diagnosed even at these high temperatures [2.3], thus emphasising the resistive nature of the EPS matrix against adverse environments.
Certain precautions can limit, to a certain extent, damages incurred to the engineering marine systems. For instance, the non-use of seawater as a coolant can minimise heat exchangers failure. In addition, pre-treatments; microfiltration using strainer or biocide application, may eliminate 99.99 % of all bacteria [2.3]. However, a few surviving cells can still enter the system regardless of measures taken, colonise metallic surfaces and develop using biodegradable substances dissolved in seawater, thus clearly indicating that biofouling and biocorrosion are still major problems within standard marine closed cooling systems [2.32].
2.4.2 Copper-nickel alloys

Cu-based materials, for instance copper-nickel (Cu-Ni) alloys, are traditionally used for marine heat exchangers due to their corrosion (not susceptible to stress corrosion) and erosion resistance, and also biocidal action against marine organisms [2.17,2.37]. The corrosion resistance of Cu-Ni alloys can be explained by their low corrosion rate: initial formation (over the first couple of days) of a thin, adherent and protective oxide layer (Cu$_2$O) on the surface, which takes 2 – 3 months to become mature, see Section 2.4.3. Shear forces in flowing seawater systems can be sufficient to damage this protective surface film (flow-induced corrosion) if the velocity regime is above the breakaway velocity: 3 – 4 m s$^{-1}$, i.e. typical values in design of Cu-based pipes depending on the local geometry and pipe dimensions (100 mm diameter pipes) [2.37]. In the presence of entrained sand particles, the critical velocity range can be reduced due to solid particle erosion, which is related to the particle size (µm), the sand concentration in parts per million (ppm) and the local geometry of the fluid-handling component exposed to erosion. Conversely, if a minimum seawater velocity of 0.5 m s$^{-1}$ is not maintained, build-up of sediments can form on the bottom of piping systems, as a result of initiation sites for corrosion underneath the deposits [2.37]. Consequently, the erosion resistance of the Cu-Ni alloys depends on the operating flow regimes and design of the marine heat exchangers. Despite their good corrosion resistance properties, Cu-Ni alloys can suffer from localised corrosion (pitting) when exposed to sulphide-polluted seawater [2.17,2.37]. More precisely, hydrogen sulphide (H$_2$S) is a corrosive metabolite formed by SRB using sulphate (SO$_4^{2-}$) ions and hydrogen (see Equation 2.1) and can dissociate in alkaline solution to sulphide (S$^{2-}$) ions, see Equation 2.2 [2.2,2.3].

$$H_2SO_4 + 4H_2 \rightarrow H_2S + 4H_2O \quad (2.1)$$
$$H_2S + 2OH^- \rightarrow S^{2-} + 2H_2O \quad (2.2)$$
The significance of the corrosion incurred by sulphide-polluted seawater depends on the concentration of $S^{2-}$ (accelerated attacks have been observed at low concentration of 0.01 ppm) and the sequence of exposure: polluted and clean seawater [2,37]. A mechanism of corrosion by SRB in seawater polluted with sulphides has been proposed with a modification of the oxide layer of Cu-based materials by $S^{2-}$, leading to a grey layer of $Cu_2S(NiFe)_3S_4/Cu_2O$, and with a cathodic process that can include $H_2S$ [2,2,2.3]:

$$2H_2S + 2e^- \rightarrow H_2 + 2HS^- \quad (2.3)$$

In addition, ammonia is a pollutant that may cause intensive corrosion (thermogalvanic corrosion attacks) by denickeling of the Cu-Ni alloys [2.37]. The resistance of Cu-based alloys to macrofouling has been attributed to the continuous release of Cu ions within the protective oxide film, thus affecting many marine organisms (inhibition of macromolecule synthesis and enzymatic reactions, effect on bacterial growth and decrease of cell numbers) and the overall process of microfouling [2.17,2.37]. Similarly, it was proposed that the top oxide layers of the Cu-Ni alloys formed during secondary corrosion reactions with compounds in seawater, e.g. $Cu_2(OH)_3Cl$, can be fouled and also subsequently removed from the surface. This can be explained by the weakly adherent porous structure of the top layers formed during secondary corrosion reactions and ensuing periodic biofouling formation and development, and also sloughs off, thus revealing the inner Cu oxide layer, $Cu_2O$ [2.38,2.39].

However, certain genera of bacteria protected by a polysaccharide barrier, e.g. *Pseudomonas syringae* which can mediate sequestration of Cu by extracellular and periplasmic proteins [2.40], can be resistant and accommodate the toxic effect of Cu ions, thus affecting the overall biofouling process. The common Cu-Ni alloys used for marine applications are 90-10 and 70-30 Cu-Ni with corrosion rates in the order of 0.040 and 0.025 mm y$^{-1}$, respectively [2.41]. They can both be installed on different marine engineering structures, e.g. piping systems and tubes in heat exchangers. In particular, 90-10 Cu-Ni (UNS C70600) is mainly used for surface ships since it combines both good resistance to corrosion and macrofouling, thus minimising the propelling energy consumption of ships to a low level. Whereas 70-30 Cu-Ni (UNS C71500) is predominantly used for military submarines, where the nickel (Ni) reinforced Cu alloys ensure higher strength, maximum allowable flow rate, and also low magnetic permeability (essential to minimise detection of submarines) [2.17,2.37]. Overall, Cu-Ni alloys offer a unique combination of high resistance performance to both biofouling and...
corrosion in marine environment with a potential of more than 20 years of life expectancy in-service [2.37].

More expensive metallic surfaces such as, Ti and certain SS, *e.g.* UNS S31254 and UNS S31603, may also be used for their corrosion resistance properties [2.37]. However, Ti used in electrical contact with dissimilar metals or alloys, *e.g.* Cu-Ni alloys, can lead to galvanic corrosion: one of the most common and damaging forms of corrosion, see Table 2.2. As a consequence, Ti is not used in submarines. Noble SS are also susceptible to significant potential changes, *i.e.* up to a 1.000 V in variation (depending on O\textsubscript{2} and chlorine content, temperature, and also the presence of a biofilm), in marine environment [2.37]. In contact with Cu-based alloys, galvanic corrosion can therefore occur (Table 2.2). To minimise galvanic corrosion, it is hence recommended to use compatible materials, as Cu-Ni alloys lies midway in the galvanic series (Table 2.2), it is thereby a good candidate. However, the combination of different metals in-service is often unavoidable, and in many instances as Ti is a poor cathode for reducing O\textsubscript{2}, it can be coupled with Cu-based alloys [2.37]. Consequently, protection measures should be taken to limitate and ultimately avoid galvanic corrosion: use of a non-conducting distance spool between the dissimilar metals. Aluminium (Al) alloys, which are relatively lower in cost and more thermally efficient than the other candidates, can also be used in shell-and-tube designs [2.32]. Once again, incorrect assembly of Al alloys in an engineering system made of more noble material can result in galvanic corrosion.
Table 2.2. Galvanic series in flowing seawater (conditions: 2.5 – 4.0 m s\(^{-1}\) and 10 – 25 °C, 1 atm) – Values in brackets indicate low velocity or poorly aerated water, and at shielded areas, adapted from [2.41-2.43].

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Metal / alloy or mineral</th>
<th>(E_{\text{vs. Ag/AgCl, 3.5 M KCl}}) (Approximate)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Graphite</td>
<td>+0.240 to +0.340</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Platinum</td>
<td>+0.220 to +0.290</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gold</td>
<td>+0.140 to +0.240</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ni – Cr – Mo alloy C</td>
<td>+0.010 to +0.130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Titanium</td>
<td>–0.010 to +0.100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ni – Cr – Mo – Cu – Si alloy B</td>
<td>+0.060 to +0.080</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ni – Fe – Cr alloy 825</td>
<td>+0.020 to +0.080</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alloy 20 stainless steels, cast and wrought</td>
<td>0.000 to +0.100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UNS S31600, UNS S31700 stainless steel</td>
<td>+0.040 to –0.060</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nickel copper alloys 400 and K-500</td>
<td>0.000 to –0.110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UNS S30200, UNS S30400, UNS S32100,</td>
<td>–0.010 to –0.060</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UNS S 34700 stainless steel</td>
<td>(-0.430 to –0.540)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Silver</td>
<td>–0.060 to –0.110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nickel 200 (UNS N02200)</td>
<td>–0.060 to –0.160</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Silver braze alloys</td>
<td>–0.060 to –0.160</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nickel chromium alloy 600 (UNS N06600)</td>
<td>–0.085 to –0.135</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nickel aluminium bronze</td>
<td>–0.110 to –0.180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70-30 copper nickel (UNS C71500)</td>
<td>–0.140 to –0.185</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lead</td>
<td>–0.160 to –0.200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UNS S43000 stainless steel</td>
<td>–0.160 to –0.240</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80-20 copper nickel (UNS C71000)</td>
<td>–0.180 to –0.240</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nickel silver</td>
<td>–0.220 to –0.240</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UNS S41600, UNS S41000 stainless steel</td>
<td>–0.220 to –0.290</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tin bronze</td>
<td>–0.225 to –0.280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Silicon bronze</td>
<td>–0.230 to –0.250</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manganese bronze</td>
<td>–0.250 to –0.300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Admiralty brass, aluminium bronze</td>
<td>–0.250 to –0.310</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50-50 Lead tin solder</td>
<td>–0.250 to –0.335</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Copper</td>
<td>–0.260 to –0.320</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tin</td>
<td>–0.260 to –0.280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Naval brass, yellow brass and red brass</td>
<td>–0.260 to –0.350</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aluminium bronze</td>
<td>–0.280 to –0.370</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Austenitic nickel cast iron</td>
<td>–0.380 to –0.490</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low alloy steel</td>
<td>–0.530 to –0.590</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mild steel, cast iron</td>
<td>–0.560 to –0.680</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cadmium</td>
<td>–0.660 to –0.690</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aluminium alloys</td>
<td>–0.710 to –0.950</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Beryllium</td>
<td>–0.930 to –0.950</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zinc</td>
<td>–0.950 to –0.980</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Magnesium</td>
<td>–1.560 to –1.600</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2.4.3 Biocorrosion in heat exchangers

2.4.3.1 Uniform corrosion of the Cu matrix in seawater

In Section 2.4.3, the author will assume that the seawater environment is free of pollutants including sulphides and ammonia. Uniform corrosion occurs on metal surfaces, e.g. Cu matrix, which have homogeneous microstructures [2.44]. At the microlevel, uniform corrosion is found to be an electrochemical reaction between adjacent closely spaced micro-anode and micro-cathode areas, see Figure 2.7. In this instance, five essential components are required for corrosion to occur: anode region, cathode region, electrical contact between regions, seawater and cathode reactant: dissolved oxygen (DO), with micro-galvanic effects between adjacent metal grains and/or microstructures.

![Figure 2.7. Corrosion in marine heat exchangers (e.g. Cu-based alloys): (a) grain boundaries in Cu matrix and (b) corrosion within the Cu matrix.](image)

However, the corrosion of Cu alloys (often used for marine applications) in seawater is more complex than that shown in Figure 2.7. It has been established that the main corrosion process in aerated chloride media, e.g. seawater, is the anodic dissolution of Cu to form a dichlorocuprous anion complex [2.45-2.47], which is generally simplified to Equations 2.4 and 2.5:

\[ \text{Cu} + \text{Cl}^- \rightarrow \text{CuCl} + \text{e}^- \quad (2.4) \]
\[ \text{Cu} + 2\text{Cl}^- \rightarrow \text{CuCl}_2^- + \text{e}^- \quad (2.5) \]
The predominant cathodic reaction in aerated seawater is the oxygen reduction reaction (ORR) \[2.42,2.44\]:

\[
O_2 + 2H_2O + 4e^- \rightarrow 4OH^- 
\]  
\hspace{1cm} (2.6)

Chloride (Cl\(^{-}\)) ions play an important role in the formation and properties of protective oxide films on Cu-based alloys. Indeed, Cu\(_2\)O may form via a number of processes in Cl\(^{-}\) containing environments, see Equation 2.7. The extent of Cu\(_2\)O formation depends on the relative concentration of Cl\(^{-}\) and pH, with higher pH favouring Cu\(_2\)O. Although these processes only relate to the formation of the first monolayers of Cu\(_2\)O, they are nevertheless important in determining the properties of the passivating interfacial Cu\(_2\)O. Beyond the first several monolayers, \textit{i.e.} for films of the order of 1 – 10 nm in thickness, thicker Cu\(_2\)O layers in Figure 2.8 are probably formed by a dissolution / precipitation process \[2.45,2.46\]:

\[
2CuCl_2^- + 2OH^- \rightarrow Cu_2O + H_2O + 4Cl^- 
\]  
\hspace{1cm} (2.7)

\textbf{Figure 2.8.} The initial corrosion of Cu-based alloys and formation of the protective oxide film.

Cl\(^{-}\) ions will also affect the properties and stability of the protective oxide films. The substitution of monovalent Cl\(^{-}\) ions for divalent superoxide anion (O\(_2^-\)) in the Cu\(_2\)O lattice creates defects and enhances the semiconducting properties of the film. Thus, Cu\(_2\)O films formed in chloride media may support electrochemical processes such as the ORR and the anodic dissolution of Cu, and be less protective, compared with the more-strongly passivating Cu\(_2\)O films formed in the absence of Cl\(^{-}\) ions. Depending on the chloride concentration, however, Cu\(_2\)O films formed in Cl\(^{-}\) media may be more susceptible to localised breakdown. At sufficiently high chloride concentrations, the surface layer may become so defective that it no longer protects the surface and the Cu actively dissolves. Thus, the stability of Cu\(_2\)O is inversely dependent on the
concentration of Cl$^-$ ions [2.45,2.46], i.e. as the concentration of Cl$^-$ ions increases the stability of Cu$_2$O equilibrium shifts to CuCl$_2$.$^-$

2.4.3.2 MIC of Cu-based alloys in seawater

Proliferation, aggregation and random attachment of bacteria are driven by microstructural features such as inclusions [2.1,2.2]. It has been reported that biofilm-forming bacteria may selectively colonise at grain boundaries [2.1,2.2]. This can cause long-term patchiness in the biofilm coverage leading to the initiation of localised corrosion. While initially immune from biofouling due to the toxic Cu-ion release within the protective oxide film, this immunity diminishes over time. Additionally, certain Cu resistant bacteria species, such as *Pseudomonas syringae*, can secrete proteins that sequester Cu ions [2.40]. Consequently, exposure to natural seawater for several months will inevitably lead to a multilayered structure of microorganisms, where EPS is usually found entrapped between layers of the Cu corrosion products. **Section 2.4.3.1** has described the primary reaction of the natural corrosion process of Cu alloys resulting in the formation of a cuprous oxide film, Cu$_2$O. The anodic and cathodic sites of the reaction take place at the metal / oxide and seawater / oxide interfaces, respectively and subsequently **Figure 2.8** leads progressively to **Figure 2.9**.

![Figure 2.9](image)

**Figure 2.9.** Formation of Cu$_2$O via a potential number of processes.
The Cu$_2$O film does not consist of a completely dense layer as a consequence the Cu matrix can continuously release Cu ions within the primary oxide film, thus having potential antifouling effects [2.37]. The resistance of the Cu matrix to macrofouling can thereby be controlled by the release of Cu ions within the Cu$_2$O film. After a prolonged exposure, the corrosion film thickens and another oxide layer is generated. It was shown that atacamite, Cu$_2$(OH)$_3$Cl, in Figure 2.10(a) can form on the outside surface of the Cu$_2$O layer by oxidation process [2.41]:

$$\text{Cu}_2\text{O} + 2\text{H}_2\text{O} + \text{Cl}^- \rightarrow \text{Cu}_2(\text{OH})_3\text{Cl} + \text{H}^+ + 2\text{e}^- \quad (2.8)$$

The top layer oxide, Cu$_2$(OH)$_3$Cl, is usually thick and porous and can act as a diffusion barrier for Cu ions into seawater whereas the kinetic of the cathodic process remains relatively unchanged [2.41]. Similarly, Cu$_2$O is known to be thermodynamically unstable and a redox transformation of Cu$_2$O to cupric oxide, CuO can occur [2.41]:

$$\text{Cu}_2\text{O} + \text{H}_2\text{O} \rightarrow 2\text{CuO} + 2\text{H}^+ + 2\text{e}^- \quad (2.9)$$

The presence of protons in Equation 2.9 can lead to localised acidification of pores within the film, thus resulting in pitting formation on Cu-based alloys. It has also been reported that this localised corrosion process may contribute to the production of atacamite (Equation 2.10), with evidence of Cu$_2$(OH)$_3$Cl compounds in pitted areas on the Cu surface [2.41].

$$2\text{CuO} + \text{H}^+ + \text{Cl}^- + \text{H}_2\text{O} \rightarrow \text{Cu}_2(\text{OH})_3\text{Cl} \quad (2.10)$$

The release of H$^+$ ions coincides with low pH values (< 6), which can allow the formation of light grey translucent cuprous chloride, CuCl, when the corrosion process initiates [2.41]. Likewise, CuCl can be an unstable intermediate in the formation of CuCl$_2^-$ as the corrosion potential moves to more positive values. This results in Figure 2.10(b) in the formation of Cu$_2$(OH)$_3$Cl by hydrolysis of CuCl at the bottom of the pores located in the growing film [2.41]:

$$2\text{CuCl} + 3\text{H}_2\text{O} \rightarrow \text{Cu}_2(\text{OH})_3\text{Cl} + \text{Cl}^- + 3\text{H}^+ + 2\text{e}^- \quad (2.11)$$
As the diffusion of Cu ions through the atacamite layer becomes increasingly difficult, the Cu-alloys can be affected by biofouling. Subsequently, the poorly adherent Cu$_2$(OH)$_3$Cl layer will undergo sequential biofilm formation and extent, Figure 2.10(c), and also removal, thus leaving a freshly exposed primary oxide layer resistant to macrofouling [2.38,2.39], see Figure 2.10(d).

![Figure 2.10](image)

**Figure 2.10.** Establishment of a non-toxic top layer oxide, Cu$_2$(OH)$_3$Cl, on an inner (a) Cu$_2$O and (b) CuO films, (c) settlement of fouling organisms on the surface and (d) fouling organisms dispersal revealing the inner oxide layer, Cu$_2$O or CuO.

However, the inner Cu$_2$O layer (where Cu$_2$O has been identified as the main corrosion product of Cu-Ni alloys in alkaline solutions [2.41]) is still susceptible to microfouling and bacterial biofilms can form and extend on the Cu surface. Figure 2.11 shows the influence of the complex redox processes within and nearby the EPS matrix.
The interfacial Cu / EPS matrix in Figure 2.11 becomes increasingly acidic due to the presence of carboxylic acid groups ($pK_a$ in the range of 4.2 to 5.6) and also via the formation of corrosion products $\text{Cu}_2\text{O}$ and eventually $\text{CuOH}$ [2.48], see Equations 2.12 and 2.13.

\begin{align*}
2\text{Cu} + \text{H}_2\text{O} &\rightarrow \text{Cu}_2\text{O} + 2\text{H}^+ + 2\text{e}^- \\
\text{Cu} + \text{H}_2\text{O} &\rightarrow \text{CuOH} + \text{H}^+ + \text{e}^- 
\end{align*} 

Consequently, the presence of a heterogeneous biofilm on the Cu matrix results in the formation of pH gradients underneath biofilms, whereas the phase boundary EPS / seawater corresponds to alkaline pH [2.48]. In particular, values lower that pH 5 can be expected underneath aerobic biofilms and pH in the range of 1 – 2 may be assessed under discrete biodeposits. The passive layer of metal alloys may be affected by marine biofilms for pH values below 3. In addition, pH values in the range of 2 to 5 were measured at discrete locations within marine biofilms using microelectrodes [2.49]. Similarly, localised measurements of DO levels within 180 $\mu$m biofilms using microelectrodes have indicated that the DO can decrease to zero [2.31]. Overall, the presence of a biofilm on a metallic surface can therefore coincide with a galvanic cell, in analogy with the most extensively described bioelectrochemical system (BES): the microbial fuel cell (MFC) [2.50-2.54]. At the anode, where $\text{O}_2$ is deficient, soluble organic material in seawater can be oxidised by respiratory enzymes, thus forming $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ and carbon dioxide (CO$_2$). The resulting electrons can transfer into the bacteria with subsequent charge transport inside the cell [2.53].
Although the exact contribution of bacterial cells to electron transfer process at a metal interface needs to be addressed, it has been suggested that the electric current can be conducted using three extracellular electron transfer (EET) mechanisms [2.54], see Figure 2.12.

**Figure 2.12.** Schematic of three EET mechanisms for aerobic bacteria on a metallic surface: (a) direct electron transfer, (b) a reduced electron shuttle ($S_{\text{red}}$) that is oxidised ($S_{\text{ox}}$) and vice versa, and (c) a solid conductive matrix, from [2.54].

The first EET mechanism in Figure 2.12(a) involves a direct electron transfer utilising outer-membrane cytochromes (membrane-bound proteins, which contain heme groups / carboxylate functions and carry out electron transfer [2.50,2.51,2.55]) [2.53]. In the second EET mechanism in Figure 2.12(b), soluble electron shuttles (simultaneously oxidised and reduced chemical compounds involved in the biodegradation of organic material by facilitating the transfer of electrons to and from bacteria [2.50,2.51,2.55]) are mediators for electron transfer process. Whereas, a solid conductive matrix, *i.e.* a component of the EPS matrix support for electron transfer such as bacterial nanowires / pili (hairlike appendage on the surface of bacteria) [2.50,2.51,2.55] can be used in Figure 2.12(c) [2.54].
In this scheme, it has also been reported that free electrons at the surface of bacterial cells can be exchanged with a metal surface during initial adhesion, where the charge transfer between bacteria and metallic surfaces can play a predominant role [2.55]. For instance, a charge of approximately $10^{-14}$ C per bacterium can be transferred on average during initial adhesion, thus corresponding to a small portion of the total surface charge for one bacterium, i.e. $10^{-12}$ C (see Section 5.13.3) [2.55, 2.56]. As part of the redox process, electrons collect at the cathode, where enzymatic assisted reduction of O$_2$ occurs at the outer biofilm areas, see Figure 2.11. Overall, evidence of electrochemically improved biofilmed electrodes, with better catalytic effects than a bare electrode, has been demonstrated [2.50]. The electrochemical performance of the biofilmed surfaces across the interface, showing substantial potential losses and larger current densities, were enhanced in comparison with the control bare electrode [2.50]. Importantly, the performances of MFC-based reactors have revealed that successive microbial interactions and its extent can lead to electrochemically competent BES biofilms. In this instance, bacterial biofilms have shown capable of regulating the diffusion influx of nearby electro-active species / substrates and the corresponding discharge of electrons to the electrode [2.50].

Although a detailed and complete understanding of the interfacial processes involved has not been established yet, theoretical considerations published in the literature state that [2.48]:

- Neutral components, anions and cations, e.g. H$_2$O, O$_2$, and Cl$^-$, can pass through the EPS matrix, thus allowing the formation of Cu oxides / hydroxides, CuCl$_2^-$ and CuCl.
- Transport of Cu-ions (Cu$^+$ / Cu$^{2+}$) via electrochemical processes through the exopolymeric matrix is influenced by the gradient of electrochemical potential of ions due to the Cu oxidation reaction.
- The dissociable protons from the hydroxyls of the carboxyl groups of the anionic polysaccharides are oriented towards the Cu$_2$O layer.
Schiffrin and de Sánchez have demonstrated the modification of the O₂ reduction kinetics by bacteria of genus *Pseudoalteromonas*, and have proposed the role of bacterial metabolites as electrocatalysts [2.57]. Similarly, it has been proposed that specific enzymes entrapped in the EPS of aerobic bacteria could be responsible for an increase in cathodic currents, e.g. catalase [2.58,2.59]. Catalase is an integral component of bacterial cells response to oxidative stress and is believed to limit the accumulation of reactive O₂ species such as hydrogen peroxide (H₂O₂) that readily diffuses through cell membranes damaging their structures [2.60,2.61]. The mechanism requires the electrochemical production of H₂O₂ during the O₂ reduction process (Equations 2.14 and 2.15) and involves electron recycling during the enzymatic decomposition of H₂O₂ to H₂O and O₂ by the catalase enzyme, see Equation 2.16 [2.61].

\[
\begin{align*}
O_2 + 2H_2O + 2e^- &\rightarrow H_2O_2 + 2OH^- \quad (2.14) \\
H_2O_2 + 2e^- &\rightarrow 2OH^- \quad (2.15) \\
2H_2O_2 &\rightarrow 2H_2O + O_2 \quad (2.16)
\end{align*}
\]

A schematic representation of the proposed catalase mechanism coupled with the O₂ reduction process of a metal surface is shown in Figure 2.14. The O₂ generated by the enzyme can be electrochemically reduced in addition to the O₂ reaching the surface by diffusion, thus, resulting in higher cathodic currents. For information, \( k_β \) is the reaction rate constant at step \( β \) (I to IV), where dis and dis’ stand for dissolution. Species in solution (sol) or adsorbed to the surface (ads) are indicated in Figure 2.14.
Figure 2.14. Catalase mechanism involved in the cathodic reaction, adapted from [2.59].

Schiffrin and de Sánchez have also investigated the effect of Cu$^{2+}$ ions on Pseudoalteromonas species identified in the bacterial slimes present in marine condenser tubes made of Cu alloys [2.57]. They observed that Pseudoalteromonas bacteria can be tolerant to Cu$^{2+}$ ions, i.e. no evidence of both a decrease of the bacterial activity and corrosion rate. Likewise, it was proposed that the Pseudoalteromonas genus may be more aggressive and cause enhancement of the corrosion rate (5 to 10 times more significant than for a mixed culture of bacteria) [2.57]. Metal-catalysed oxidation systems are reported to readily form H$_2$O$_2$ and free radicals such as the O$_2^-$ anion and hydroxyl radical (OH$^-$) [2.62]. These processes can inactivate enzymes and lead to the fragmentation of proteins. In biological systems on Cu surface (pH 3 – 5), it is probable that OH$^-$ radicals can form when Cu$^+$ ions react with H$_2$O$_2$ via a ‘Fenton-type’ reaction [2.62]:

$$\text{Cu}^+ + \text{H}_2\text{O}_2 \rightarrow \text{Cu}^{2+} + \text{OH}^- + \text{OH}^-$$  \hspace{1cm} (2.17)

This reaction presumably coincides with the enzymatic decomposition of H$_2$O$_2$ in Equation 2.16 by catalases (H$_2$O$_2$ scavengers) within Pseudoalteromonas biofilms, thus preventing the subsequent formation of OH$^-$ radicals in Equation 2.17 (potentially directly involved in proteins and DNA damages) and similarly enhancing the overall corrosion rate, see Figure 2.14. Nevertheless, the exact role of catalase in the corrosion process on a biofilmed Cu surface remains an open question [2.61]. Recently, Nercessian et al. have suggested that the catalase could be expressed inside aerobic bacterial biofilms by release of toxic Cu ions, electrochemical generation of H$_2$O$_2$ and biological oxidative stress [2.61]. More precisely, newly formed O$_2$ via the autocatalytic mechanism of H$_2$O$_2$ decomposition using catalase can support the electrochemical generation of H$_2$O$_2$ during the cathodic ORR (see Figure 2.14), thus
promoting the anodic dissolution of both the Cu$_2$O layer and Cu matrix at acidified sites under bacterial clusters (see Figure 2.13) [2.61].

2.4.3.3 Significance of biocorrosion on Cu alloys for the current study

The biocorrosion mechanisms on a biofilmed Cu matrix (Figures 2.10, 2.11 and 2.13) have been outlined in Section 2.4.3 to support the discussion for a biofilmed Au surface in Chapter 5, where in contrast to passive metals, substantial knowledge of biofilm growth and extent on a noble metal surface is limited. Alongside with the importance of microfouling in the overall biofouling process (Figure 2.11), the fundamental role played by the catalase in the ORR enhancement has been addressed, see Figure 2.14. This represents understanding on how the ORR kinetics can be affected at the Au / aerobic bacterial biofilm interface, see Chapter 5.

2.4.4 Biofouling within heat exchangers

Previous studies have concentrated on monitoring the fluid transport properties and carrying out mathematical calculations to discover the values of two parameters that indirectly define biofouling deposited on the inside of tubes: $f_D$, the (Darcy) frictional resistance to fluid, such as seawater and $R_h$, the heat transfer resistance [2.63, 2.64].

2.4.4.1 Frictional resistance to fluid flow

In order to understand the influence of biofouling with regard to the frictional resistance to fluid flows, it is necessary to apply Darcy’s formula (for fluid flow) through circular straight pipes (with $d$ and $l$ the diameter and length of the tubing) [2.65]:

$$f_D = \frac{2d\Delta P}{l\rho u^2}$$

(2.18)

Seawater (with $\rho = 1025$ kg m$^{-3}$) flowing through heat exchanger pipes, e.g. 21 mm diameter Cu-Ni tubes at $u = 1.5$ m s$^{-1}$ (with $u$ the mean velocity) loses energy due to friction, $f_D$. This energy loss manifests as an increase in pressure drop ($\Delta P$) within a pipe system. As marine biofilms attach and grow on the internal surfaces of pipes, they form a gel (secrete EPS matrix) which increases the frictional resistance to seawater flow. Thus, according to Equation 2.18, the energy loss characterised by a pressure drop also increases. Overall, skin friction and pressure drag are the two main
contributions of $\Delta P$ [2.66]. At low flow velocity, skin friction is predominant, thus suggesting that the total surface area of the biofilm may have a significant influence on the pressure drop. Conversely at high flow regime where the pressure drag is dominant, the shape of the biofilm structures will potentially have a great effect on the pressure drop. A previous study on the effect of $\Delta P$ with $u$ under a controlled turbulent condition, has demonstrated that 7 day-old biofilms inside a flow cell device resulted in a 16 % decrease of the maximum achievable flow rate [2.66].

In addition, investigations of the frictional losses in a piping system due to biological fouling have been carried out by Eguia et al. [2.63,2.64]. In particular, biofouling has been described as an operational definition, when the extent of biofilm development interferes with technical, economical and aesthetic requirements [2.3]. In this instance, a threshold of interference has also been defined corresponding to a critical stage of biofouling when the operational performances of the engineering system are affected. The overall significance of the threshold of interference depends on the in-service operational conditions of marine heat exchanger design. Consequently, a detailed knowledge of the engineering system under investigation is fundamental in establishing the most efficient countermeasures against biofouling. Figure 2.15 shows the three main stages; Induction, Log Accumulation and Plateau and their corresponding influence of frictional resistance [2.1,2.3,2.4].

![Figure 2.15. Qualitative evolution of the Darcy frictional resistance to fluid in marine heat exchangers over a period of biofouling development, adapted from [2.3].](image-url)
It has been reported that a biological film of *circa* 10 µm thick can double the frictional resistance in a smooth pipe [2.67]. Likewise, the evolution of the frictional resistance to fluid motion within 10 mm diameter SS tubes (UNS S31603) of 3,165 mm in length was monitored over a 40-day biofouling growth seawater flowing at \( u = 1.9 \text{ m s}^{-1} \) [2.63]. It was shown that \( f_D \) remained relatively constant (\( f_D = 0.025 \pm 0.005 \)) during the initial 12 days and then increased to level off at \( f_D = 0.045 \pm 0.005 \) after approximately 24 days, thus corresponding to an 80% increase in frictional resistance to fluid. Overall, biofouling deposits on the inside of tubes decreases the effective tube diameter (\( d \)), thus reducing the cross sectional area. For instance, biofouling build-up on a large 200 mm diameter carbon steel pipe has been reported to reduce the cross-sectional area by about 50% over a 2.5 year exposure [2.68], restricting the pipe flow rate (\( Q \)) and subsequently the performance of the heat exchange (heat transfer).

### 2.4.4.2 Heat transfer resistance

The heat transfer resistance or \( R_h \) is defined as the sum of the resistance to heat transmission by convection (due to the motion of seawater) or conduction (resulting from the agglomeration of insulating layers formed by the biofouling deposits) [2.18,2.69]. Marine biofilms (where 95% of the EPS matrix is made of water, only allows diffusive heat transport to occur) are reported to provide significant thermal insulation to heat exchanger surface from seawater [2.18,2.69]. In contrast, heat transfer by convection is inhibited, which is problematic since convective transport reduces biofouling agglomeration within the pipe surface [2.69].

Alongside with \( R_h \), the overall heat transfer coefficient (\( h \)) represents the overall ability of convective and conductive barriers to transfer heat. An experimental study carried out in the Institut Francais de Recherche pour l'Exploitation de la Mer (IFREMER) for the French Ocean Thermal Energy Conversion (OTEC) programme focused on the evolution of the overall heat transfer coefficient (\( h \)) and the pressure drop with time within a 25 mm diameter Ti tube (at 1.5 m s\(^{-1}\)) [2.70]. The results showed that \( h \) remained constant (values similar to typical heat transfer coefficients around 5,000 W m\(^{-2}\) K\(^{-1}\)) during the initial 15 days and decreased twice as less after 30 days. The corresponding \( \Delta P \) along a 1 m length distance was also monitored with time: a detectable increase in pressure drop at around 1,200 Pa was assessed after 20 days of exposure and \( \Delta P \) was 2.5 times (~3,000 Pa) more significant than the initial value after a 50 days time duration. Overall, studies on OTEC plants have revealed that a 55
A 34 µm thick biological film would lead to unacceptable reduction in the heat transfer of heat exchanger tubes [2.71]. This value of biofilm thickness is consistent with about 10 times thicker films (compared to thin biological layers), where the thermal boundary layer (δt) due to the difference of temperature between the wall and free stream can be affected [2.33-2.35]. In addition, the heat transfer performance of 90-10 Cu-Ni (UNS C70600) tubes with regard to biofouling have been evaluated in flowing seawater (at 1.8 to 2.4 m s⁻¹) over a 180-day period [2.72]. It was shown that biofouling significantly reduced the heat exchange after 90 – 110 days of exposure.

2.4.4.3 Estimate of biofilm / biological film thickness (δₘ)

Devices that measure total solid matter deposited inside surfaces of the tubes can be fitted at the outlet of heat exchanger tubes. These devices are usually composed of test-tube holders made of polyvinyl chloride that can house small portions of the test tubes; e.g. 6.5 mm in length, mounted on the heat exchanger unit [2.63]. In these configurations, both the test- and heat exchanger tubes have similar diameter, composition and surface finish. The test-tubes are extractable and allow assessing an estimate of the thickness of adhered biological films (δₘ) [2.63]. In practice, a biofilm thickness of 100 µm was reported after a 50 days exposure within the OTEC programme at IFREMER (25 mm diameter Ti tube at 1.5 m s⁻¹) [2.70]. Characklis suggested that an increase in ∆P is due to the presence of biofilms only when δₘ reaches the viscous sublayer (δl) [2.68], where in turbulent regime δl results from the very thin region in contact with a metal surface experiencing turbulent mixing impediment (δl represents about 1 % of the diffusion boundary layer, δd, which in turn is indicative of a concentration gradient of reactants at the surface due to mass transport and whose thickness decreases when u increases [2.65]). In this instance, δd is a parameter of relevance since it corresponds where the majority of the modifications in the fluid stress characteristics, turbulence, mass transfer and fluid interaction at the wall surface can occur [2.65]. Under low flow regime, bacterial cells must traverse δd, where bacterial biofilm formation and development depend on cell size and motility [2.27]. It is usually assumed that about 7 s are required for species to diffuse across δd (typical thickness of 6.0 µm for a microelectrode) regardless of fluid flow [2.74]. In contrast, planktonic bacteria are affecting by turbulence and mixing at higher flow conditions, thus associated with rapid surface colonisation until flow velocity reaches values relevant to substantial shear forces leading to biofilm dispersal [2.27]. However, Stoodley et al. measured a 3 times lower biofilm thickness (causing substantial pressure drop) than δl within a flow cell device [2.66]. Overall, this suggests that
considerations on biofilm thickness assessment need to be further addressed with suitable standard methods communally agreed.

2.4.4.4 Characteristics of hydrodynamic and diffusion dependent systems

Dimensionless numbers, such as the Reynolds number ($R_e$) are generally used to characterise hydrodynamic and diffusion dependent flow conditions [2.65]. The $R_e$ value can represent a flow regime indicator from laminar to turbulent conditions and can be defined in Equation 2.19 for circular straight pipes as the ratio of inertial to viscous forces in the fluid [2.65,2.74]:

$$R_e = \frac{ud}{\nu_k}$$  \hspace{1cm} (2.19)

where $u$ is the mean flow velocity, $d$ the characteristic diameter and $\nu_k$ the kinematic viscosity of the fluid. In practical engineering conditions, the flow in circular pipes is usually laminar for $R_e \leq 2,300$, turbulent for $R_e \geq 4,000$, and transitional in between [2.74]. Typical values of $R_e$ used by heat exchangers in-service conditions are beyond 10,000; e.g. flow regimes of $R_e \approx 35,700$ (1.5 m s$^{-1}$) within a 25 mm diameter Ti tube in the French OTEC programme at IFREMER [2.70]. It is assumed that when $R_e$ is less than 10,000, the deposition rate, on the heat exchanger internal walls is much greater than the removal rate. This leads to emergency shut downs and reduce the extent of the period of operation [2.64]. Likewise, running the heat exchanger systems at high flow regimes is not a viable solution since it would result in both an increase in the overall heat transfer coefficient and pressure drop, and also potential erosion of material surface [2.3]. Consequently, these engineering problems would cause enhanced energy consumption, systems failure and increased capital costs. In addition, studies on the effect of $R_e$ on the biofilm thickness by Pujo and Bott, under nutrient limited conditions at $R_e = 11,000$, suggested that $\delta_b$ was 10 times thicker at 0.5 m s$^{-1}$ than at 2 m s$^{-1}$ over a 15-days exposure [2.3,2.5]. Similarly, biofilm density (dry mass / wet volume) has been reported to be affected by the mean velocity: increases from 0.1 to 0.5 m s$^{-1}$ resulted in densities between 26 – 76 kg m$^{-3}$ [2.3,2.5]. Velocity profile measurements within biofilms have also proven the existence of a transition between smooth to turbulent flow using the roughness Reynolds number ($R_k$) for $R_k > 3.5 – 5.0$ [2.66]. In this instance, $R_k$ represents the critical condition, which causes a wedge of turbulence due to roughness, i.e. depending on roughness height and the velocity in the laminar boundary layer at the roughness height [2.75].
The mass transfer due to bulk convection (net transport of fluid along the pipe) and
turbulent convection (exchange of the fluid between $\delta_d$ and the bulk) are important
concepts in hydrodynamics, thus can affect biofouling processes. In this instance,
Schiffrin and de Sánchez [2.57] have argued that the mass transfer coefficient ($K_m$)
derived from the rotating disk electrode (RDE) geometry can facilitate comparisons
between different geometries / flow conditions, e.g. comparison with a circular straight
pipe, thus consistent with Pletcher and Walsh [2.42].

This approach can be extended to the RDE developed by Herbert-Guillou et al. to
monitor biofilm formation and growth [2.76,2.77]. This technique developed to assess
biofilm thicknesses in situ is based on two fundamental properties inherent to change
of mass transport associated with biological films: (i) biofilms behave as an inert porous
layer and (ii) the diffusion coefficient in the biofilm $D_f$ is the same as that for the
electrolyte solution [2.77]. Measures of biofilm thicknesses were monitored using a
RDE embedded inside a tube under a controlled turbulent flow at 0.5 m s$^{-1}$ in a
seawater environment [2.77]. After a 28-day exposure, the biofilm thickness varied
between 80 and about 60 µm for rotation speeds of 100 and 1,100 rpm. Overall, the
comparison between the RDE geometry and any hydrodynamic configuration, e.g.
circular straight pipes, using $K_m$ relies on the assumption that the reaction kinetic rate is
limited by diffusion [2.57]. However, mechanical effects inherent to fluid motion, which
are predominant at high flow regimes would have an influence on biofilms that is not
addressed using this comparison. At a smaller scale, Stoodley et al. have proposed a
relationship between $K_m$ and $u$ in a biofilm void using the combination of a
microelectrode measuring the local mass transfer coefficient distribution and the
particle tracking technique to characterise the velocity profile [2.78]. Whereas the tip of
the microelectrode is capable of characterising a transport-limited reaction, the overall
reaction rate inherent to bacterial cells in a biofilm may be more complex in nature, i.e.
limited both by nutrient flux and by mass transport [2.78].

The flow effects on biofilm growth and extent are not as evident as these concluding
remarks: thinner biofilms and higher removal rate with increased $u$ and $Re$, respectively
and the mechanical properties of biofilms will also play a pivotal role to adapt from
adverse flow conditions. Using the RDE configuration, Herbert-Guillou et al. have also
shown that biofilms can readily deform with increased rotation speeds and that the
biofilm structure is dependent on the hydrodynamic conditions of growth, i.e. greater
defORMATIONS for biofilms grown under laminar in comparison with turbulent regimes
[2.77]. These results are in good agreement with the conclusions drawn by Dunsmore
et al. who have demonstrated the viscoelastic characteristics of (anaerobic and aerobic) biofilms that depend on the flow regime at which biofilms are established [2.79]. Biofilms grown under turbulent conditions had enhanced mechanical properties including higher elastic modulus and a favourable propensity to recover its original shape after release of strain induced by increased flow regime. Conversely, biofilms established under laminar regimes were less rigid and presented an irreversible mechanical response (damage) upon exertion of strain [2.79]. Overall, the viscoelastic properties of biofilms can strengthen their mechanical structures (more stable) to resist detachment resulting from fluid shear [2.3]. To achieve greater hydrodynamic performance, it was shown that biofilms developed under turbulent conditions can adopt streamlined / filamentous structures to keep the flow attach nearby and minimise wakes at the rear [2.79]. Whereas, biofilms formed under laminar flow regimes are usually reported to consist of cell clusters separated by interstitial voids, thus having an overall mechanical structure less favourable with regard to profile drag [2.3].

2.4.4.5 Momentum transfer: fluid shear force

The shear stress-velocity gradient can account for the fluctuating turbulent motions of the fluid [2.80]:

\[ \tau = \mu \frac{du}{dy} \quad (2.20) \]

with \( \mu \) the dynamic viscosity, \( u \) and \( y \) representative of the velocity and the distance measured from the pipe wall, respectively. In industrial systems, high shear forces can influence EPS production and induce biofilm deformation, plus it can lead to both an increase in nutrient flux and mass transport of biocide at surfaces, enhanced shearing of biofilms, and also result in biofilm diversity and detachment [2.3,2.81]. In the published literature, typical values of \( \tau \) reported in channels within biofilms can range from 0.0642 to 0.321 Pa [2.73]. Stoodley et al. have demonstrated that wall shear stress of 1.32 Pa within a flow cell device operating under a high flow regime \((u = 0.505 \text{ m s}^{-1} \text{ and } Re = 3,351)\) can result in cell clusters sloughing away and filamentous biofilms failure [2.66]. Using similar flow systems, theoretical \( \tau \) values of 0.1 Pa at 0.04 m s\(^{-1} \) \((Re = 120)\) and 1.0 Pa at 0.4 m s\(^{-1} \) \((Re = 1,200)\) were reported by Dunsmore et al. [2.79].
Based on a comparative study on the influence of shear stresses on bacterial biofilms (leading to differences of the biofilm structure for similar flow regimes), Mehdi Salek et al. have recently addressed the importance of flow cell geometry on biofilm colonisation [2.81]. This study revealed that flow cells with different geometries operating at similar flow conditions had various wall shear stress distributions, thus affecting established biofilms under these conditions, which in turn showed different surface distributions, structures and responses to biocide. Thicker biofilms and higher surface coverage were predominant at low shear regions near the corner, whereas thin layers and reduced attachment were more pronounced within the middle of the flow cell, i.e. favourable higher shear stress conditions (enhanced interfacial mass transfer and less effective diffusive barrier) for a biocide to penetrate across the biofilm [2.81]. Overall, these results were consistent with previous works reported by Duddridge et al. using a corrosion flow loop, where maximum adhesion was observed at low surface shear stress on SS UNS S31600 tubes.

However, the significance of these shear stress values at the laboratory scale needs to be fully addressed with regard to industrial systems. Figure 2.16 shows typical shear stress values at the interface between flowing seawater and the pipe surface. The values in Figure 2.16 are taken from [2.72] and published $\tau$ values corresponding to channels within biofilms in [2.73] have been added to be able to predict the range of shear stress values required to slough biofilms away within heat exchanger tubes.
Figure 2.16. Evolution of the wall shear stress with the mean velocity in flowing seawater inside Cu-based alloys of different diameters, adapted from [2.72].

Up to $u = 2.0 \text{ m s}^{-1}$, it is important to notice that the shear stress values are independent of the pipe diameter. By considering $u = 3 - 4 \text{ m s}^{-1}$, i.e. the breakaway velocity (see Section 2.4.2) beyond which the passive oxide layer may suffer from fluid shear induced damage, it can be predicted that the corresponding $\tau$ values may not be sufficient to successfully remove / slough off the entire biofilm. Conversely, a rough estimate of $\tau$ (Equation 2.20) can be calculated with the mean velocity $u$ and the half diameter of the tube using values reported in the published literature. For instance, using the hydrodynamic conditions of the French OTEC programme ($R_e \approx 35,700$ at $1.5 \text{ m s}^{-1}$ within a 25 mm diameter Ti tube) with $\mu = 1.07 \times 10^{-3} \text{ kg m}^{-1} \text{ s}^{-1}$ for seawater at $20 \ ^\circ\text{C}$, $\tau \approx 0.13 \text{ Pa}$ [2.70].
2.4.4.6 Significance of the hydrodynamic conditions for the current study

Since the flow induced effect on biofilms is not trivial and debatable, a controlled low laminar flow regime \( (R_e \approx 1) \) indicative of a smooth flow within biofilms \([2.66]\) represents a good alternative for the experimental tests in Chapter 4. Herein, the hydrodynamic parameters such as \( f_D, \Delta P, u, R_e \) and \( \tau \) have been addressed in order to uniquely review flow-through biofilm culture devices in the published literature and characterise the once-through flow system used for the current approach, see Section 4.6.2. Similarly, the concept of biofilm thickness consists in an important physical parameter to quantify bacterial biofilm, i.e. using accurate confocal microscopy technique (Section 5.12.3) as opposed to rough measurements of biomass deposits inside metallic surfaces (Section 2.4.4.3).

2.5 Overview of bacterial biofilm analysis

Bacterial biofilm research, both formation and inhibition, is by its very nature highly interdisciplinary involving a diverse range of scientific and engineering fields \([2.20, 2.82]\). However, previous biofilm studies have mainly focused on functional, structural and ecological aspects, for instance:

- biofilm attachment / formation stages \([2.1, 2.83]\) and biofilm cohesiveness \([2.1]\),
- the microbial and biochemical composition \([2.1]\), genetic and physiological considerations \([2.84]\),
- the complex multicellular interactions based on cell-to-cell signalling (quorum sensing \([2.85]\)),
- the protective and adsorption properties of biofilm upon exposure to organic and inorganic pollutants \([2.86]\), and
- detergents, chemical substances such as biocides, synthetic surfactants and xenobiotics (chemicals such as drugs antibiotics found in an organism but not normally produced or expected to be present inside) combined with heavy metals, reactive \( O_2 \) species and biodegradation processes \([2.87]\).

Biofilm analysis methods have recently been extensively reviewed for a range of research fields and are summarised in Table 2.3 \([2.20]\). Although a detailed assessment of the biofilm analytical techniques is beyond the scope of this PhD thesis, they can, however, be classed into (A) Physical, (B) Microscopy, (C) (Bio)-chemical and (D) Molecular microbiological methods.
Table 2.3. Biofilm research fields and analytical techniques, adapted from [2.20, 2.82].

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Research fields</th>
<th>Biofouling</th>
<th>Biocorrosion</th>
<th>Biodegradation</th>
<th>Ecology</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Biofilm structure and function</td>
<td>Community composition, metabolic activity and regulatory systems</td>
<td>Pathogenesis and hygienic relevance</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Biofilm (analytical methods)     |                                                                            |                                                                            |                                                                              |                                                                        |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|                                                                              |                                                                        |
| Molecular techniques             | Capillary Electrophoresis (CE)                                            | Atomic spectrometer                                                       |                                                                              |                                                                        |
| Separation techniques            | Extraction                                                                | Atomic Force Microscopy (AFM)                                              |                                                                              |                                                                        |
|                                  | Field Flow Fractionation (FFF)                                            | Confocal Laser Scanning Microscopy (CLSM)                                  |                                                                              |                                                                        |
| Detectors                        | Gas Chromatography (GC)                                                   | Infrared Radiation (IR)- and Attenuated Total Reflection (ATR)-IR- spectroscopy |                                                                              |                                                                        |
|                                  | Gel Electrophoresis (GE)                                                  | Nuclear Magnetic Resonance (NMR)                                           |                                                                              |                                                                        |
|                                  | Liquid Chromatography (LC)                                                | Photoacoustic spectroscopy                                                 |                                                                              |                                                                        |
|                                  | Size Exclusion Chromatography (SEC)                                       | Reflectance spectroscopy                                                   |                                                                              |                                                                        |
| Surface and interface characterising techniques |                                                                            | Scanning Electron Microscopy (SEM)                                         |                                                                              |                                                                        |
|                                  |                                                                             | Environmental Scanning Electron Microscopy (ESEM)                           |                                                                              |                                                                        |
|                                  |                                                                             | Transmission Electron Microscopy (TEM)                                      |                                                                              |                                                                        |
|                                  |                                                                             | Scanning Transmission X-ray Microscopy (STXM)                               |                                                                              |                                                                        |
|                                  |                                                                             | X-ray fluorescence spectroscopy                                            |                                                                              |                                                                        |
|                                  |                                                                             | Energy Dispersive X-ray Spectroscopy (EDS)                                 |                                                                              |                                                                        |
|                                  |                                                                             |                                                                              |                                                                              |                                                                        |
| Spectrometry                     |                                                                            |                                                                              |                                                                              |                                                                        |
|                                  | Atomic Absorption Spectroscopy (AAS)                                      |                                                                              |                                                                              |                                                                        |
|                                  | Fluorescence spectrometry                                                |                                                                              |                                                                              |                                                                        |
|                                  | Mößbauer spectrometry                                                    |                                                                              |                                                                              |                                                                        |
|                                  | Spectrophotometry                                                        |                                                                              |                                                                              |                                                                        |
| Microsensors                     |                                                                            |                                                                              |                                                                              |                                                                        |
|                                  | Electrochemical microsensors                                             |                                                                              |                                                                              |                                                                        |
|                                  | Fibre-optic microsensors                                                 |                                                                              |                                                                              |                                                                        |

(A) (B) [D] [E] [F]
Microbiological and molecular methods, which apply molecular and separation techniques, are generally used in microbiological research. These methods are also highly technical and often too expensive, most notably for the genetic techniques involving nucleic acids [2.88]. Microscopy methods, such as atomic force microscopy (AFM), scanning electron microscopy (SEM) and CLSM also called scanning confocal laser microscopy (SCLM) or laser scanning confocal microscopy (LSCM) in the literature can be included in surface and interface characterising techniques [2.89]. Chemical techniques are typically methods based on a chemical reaction, adsorption or host-guest recognition, for instance, electrochemical microsensors and detectors are in this category. Whereas, biochemical techniques differ from chemical-based procedures by using a biological substance / bio-receptor (identification of specific enzymes, antibodies, nucleic acid sequences) [2.90,2.91]. Overall, physical methods include all the techniques which rely on a physical working principle, i.e. it encompasses virtually all surface and interface characterising techniques, microsensors (excluding bio-chemical sensors) and spectrometry methods [2.91].

Within the framework of this current review, the emphasis will primarily focus on microsensors, plus corroborative microscopic methods, in order to sense for the presence / formation, and also to provide characterisation of bacterial biofilms. Thus, three key components in the interdisciplinary bacterial biofilm research [2.20,2.82] will be considered: (i) biofilm attachment / formation stages (biofilm sensing and quantification), in addition to (ii) the protective and adsorption properties of biofilm upon exposure to (iii) environmentally friendly substances (biofilm disruption to comply with environmental concerns and legislature).

2.6 Analytical detection techniques

Several common analytical techniques in Table 2.3 have been used to detect and characterise microorganisms (bacterial cells), biofilms, and also biological components (polysaccharides, proteins, nucleic acids, phospholipids and humic substances) over the last twenty years [2.20]. These techniques have proven to be reliable, sensitive and specific to the target bacteria. Generally, however, the majority of these techniques rely on preparation methods and/or sampling procedures, which are time-consuming, complex and often require highly trained operators.
According to biofilm and microbiological sampling definitions, indirect sampling (ex situ sampling) refers to sample analysis in which the sample is withdrawn from the bulk material, e.g. seawater, and transported to the external analytical testing area [2.2]. For instance, culture techniques, activity measurements and estimation of biomass are indirect methods of detection and biofilm characterisation [2.2]. In the culture methods, bacteria can be routinely tracked and identified using specific growth media (liquid or solid agar). Similarly, dip sticks consist of plastic strips coated with a layer of nutrient agar that enable rapid detection of microorganisms (when immersed in a liquid environment) and cell counts (after incubation in a warm space for 24 h) using a calibration chart. In addition, field detection kits for bacteria species, e.g. SRB or iron oxidizing bacteria, have become commercially available to diagnose MIC. After immersion in specific liquid media and incubation, the targeted microorganisms responding to these specific growth environments can be enumerated and their metabolic activity can also be measured [2.2]. Likewise, activity measurements using radiorespirometric methods (total heterotrophic activity and sulphate-reducing capacity) allow determining microbial activity in bacterial biofilms. Although microscopic assessment can provide information on biofilm biomass, its indirect determination can be performed using adenosine triphosphate (ATP) measurements used as an indicator of total microbial biomass using immunological techniques such as marker, fingerprint, enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA), and gene probes (i.e. segment of genetic material specific to a bacterial species of interest that is labelled with a radioactive substance, such as a radioactive form of phosphorus, or an enzymatically detectable molecule). Conversely, direct sampling (in situ sampling) is the analysis that is conducted directly in the bulk material without a sample being removed [2.20].

Usually, direct sampling devices used to study biofilms are either (i) directly implanted in the engineering system or (ii) side-stream devices [2.2,2.3]. For instance, devices directly embedded into pipe walls, e.g. Petrolite Bioprobe™, are housed with high pressure access fittings compatible with the metallic structure to minimise shutdown and depressurisation. Side-stream sampling devices, e.g. a Robbins device that consists of a plug inserted flush with the pipe wall, are used in parallel with the sensing system under investigation as these will experience similar wall shear stresses. Although complex designs and alternative sampling coupons to actual pipe surface are necessary, these devices can offer greater flexibility than directly implanted configurations.
The detection techniques with external preparation methods include molecular microbiology, surface and interface characterising techniques and to a large extent the new applied microbiology spectroscopy techniques. Overall, only the microsensing techniques do not typically require any preparation methods, although sensor calibration may be necessary [2.89,2.90]).

2.6.1 Advantages of in situ microsensors

By taking into account the criteria of appropriate design and manufacture procedures, the in situ microsensors generally have better performance characteristics which ultimately best relate to the experimental details for the current investigation [2.20,2.92]. These characteristics / criteria include:

- good time-response (in the order of minutes required for EPS formation [2.1]),
- real-time: in-line (analyses done with a direct interface of the detector to the process), on-line (using a recirculation loop or an automatic sample transport system from the process to the detector), and at-line (using a detector located close to the process) as opposed to off-line (analyses on samples removed from the process) measurements [2.20,2.91]),
- low-cost (compared to other analytical methods [2.20]),
- smart (actuated and data displayed by means of a convenient interface without operator repetitive procedure [2.90,2.91]),
- easy-to-use (does not require highly-trained operators), and
- remote measurements (in comparison with cumbersome equipment in other categories in Table 2.3).

2.6.2 Fundamental requirements of microsensors

In general, the development of an appropriate sensor is linked to its operational robustness and its analytical response. In particular, in situ microsensors for marine biofilm applications must tolerate extreme conditions of prolonged seawater immersion [2.93]. In addition, there may be a requirement for sterilisation (autoclaved process) and the sensors should maintain calibration with time. The dynamic range of the sensor must cover the range of variation of the measured process parameter [2.90,2.91]. Similarly, the sensor sensitivity, which is mainly dependent on the sensing
element of the sensor, needs to be in good order to observe a clear measurable signal [2.90,2.91]. Baseline drift (from the useful signal, i.e. meaningful signal corresponding to the measured quantity) due to artefacts, e.g. precipitation of marine deposits, both inorganic and organic, and surface poisoning of the sensor sensing area are common problems [2.90,2.91]. Overall, microsensing techniques may be considered as being less precise and accurate than molecular microbiological and microscopic methods. Indeed, molecular techniques have the ability to measure the gene expression of bacterial cells [2.20] and microscope techniques are of interest to calibrate sensors for biofilm analysis [2.94]. Nevertheless, the flexibility of the sensor approach for bacterial biofilms can be a good alternative to the limitations associated with precision and accuracy. To date, only a few sensors for biofilm analysis have been commercialised and accepted by industrial [2.2,2.3,2.82], thus there is scope for novel sensing strategies / methodologies to contribute to the bacterial biofilm research [2.20,2.93].

2.6.3 In situ microsensing corroborated using microscopy techniques

In this project, the surface and interface characterising techniques in Table 2.3 are the more apparent methods to corroborate in situ applied sensor technology microsensing approaches. Among the reliable techniques to characterise bacterial biofilms, surface and interface characterising methods are more convenient in terms of surface engineering approach, cost and accessibility. This is not the case for costly molecular biology, which requires a deep level of biological understanding and background. As spectrometry techniques are less mature methods (compared to the other candidates in Table 2.3) for bacterial biofilms [2.20], their use for corroborative investigations may need to be fully addressed. Importantly, microscopy techniques are probably the most convenient methods to examine microorganisms, especially bacterial species [2.2]. Historically, microscopic characterisations have allowed advanced progresses in the bacterial biofilm research using cutting-edge confocal microscopy equipments [2.2,2.3,2.23]. Novel considerations proving the existence of a three dimensional heterogeneous structure of biofilm with water channels (as opposed to a simplistic planar structure) have revolutionised the biofilm research field [2.2,2.23,2.78]. This represents evidence on the capability of advanced microscopy techniques to physically characterise the presence of bacterial biofilms on metallic surfaces. Overall, a more detailed review on microscopy techniques for bacterial biofilms is proposed in Section 2.7.
2.6.4 Review of sensor-based technology for biofilm sensing

Among the wide range of different analytical methods, the sensor technology approach is distinct from that of the various detection techniques described in Table 2.3. Indeed, sensor devices typically require a sensing element, which responds by means of a transducer and signal conditioner to an input quantity by generating a functionally related output, e.g. electrical or optical signals [2.90, 2.91]. In order to assess the appropriateness of in situ microsensor measurements, the technology should be compared with the other candidate methods. Also, the scope of the sensor devices discussed in the published research literature for biofilm sensing (pros and cons) should be investigated to select an appropriate microsensing technique for the proposed experimental work programme.

2.6.4.1 Suitability of microsensors

For microbiology purposes, the worldwide research for biofilm sensing / monitoring is mainly based on biological Microsystems [2.95]. The reason for the use of microscale sensor relies on different viewpoints discussed in the literature, see Table 2.4. Current limitations of the application of microsensors in biofilm characterisation from the literature [2.17] are detailed as follows:

- Limited commercial availability, which is to be expected since bacterial biofilm microsensing involves multidisciplinary expertise in an emerging biotechnology field.
- Isolated information caused by the heterogeneity on the microscale. However, this characteristic is inherent to the decomposition of EPS by the surface-associated microbial cells, which changes the surface charge and free energy and transforms the surface into a highly heterogeneous milieu [2.1]. For information, the patchy microstructure of the bacterial films can range from 1 – 2 µm (single bacteria) to ≥ 50 µm thick (colonies) according to simulations established by a ceramic based gradient flow cell [2.96].
- The lack of suitable mathematical models for biofilm development and growth.
Table 2.4. Characteristics of microsensors of interest for bacterial biofilm sensing.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Microsensors characteristics</th>
<th>Explanations and significance</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Measurements at specific positions within biofilms / manipulation of microorganisms</td>
<td>Biofilms are heterogeneous with a complex chemistry [2.9.2.10]. Localisation by electric fields, which can be indirectly used for bacterial biofilm disruption in this project. High spatial resolution providing by the small tip size diameter (≤ 20 µm) of optical microelectrode [2.89]. Suitable to measure chemical gradients across thin biofilm layers (≤ 100 µm) [2.97], which are required for optical bacterial biofilm sensing. However, the shape of a tip relative to a metal flat surface is not appropriate with respect to bacterial biofilm formation at the metal / biofilm interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Faster rate of mass transport, steady-state current rapidly established, shorter time measurements</td>
<td>The diffusional mass efficiency is better with a smaller surface area of a microsensor and occurs even in the absence of convection (energy transfer through a fluid with molecule displacements) [2.92, 2.98]. Surface areas (within ≈ cm²) related to conventional electrodes are therefore not appropriate. The long time taken for the measurements is subject to drift especially in the presence of living bacterial biofilms [2.99]. According to Dexter and Chandrasekaran who verified this property, this phenomenon is likely to happen if the measurement takes longer than about 30 s [2.99], which is very short and quasi-certain to occur within the scale of laboratory experiments. In addition, if the mass transport rate increases, the measurement can be done at high speed, limiting water ingress problems (mechanisms by which water penetrates into cracks and pores of the metal surface [2.100]).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No significant change of the chemistry</td>
<td>Due to the small area of a microelectrode, the quantity of chemicals reacted at the electrode surface will not change the chemistry significantly within the measurement pool [2.99].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reduction of non-faradaic current</td>
<td>Capacitive charging currents (double layer capacitance) can be reduced to insignificant proportions as the electrode size is diminished, thus resulting in a small time constant [2.92, 2.98]. Conventional electrodes undergo this dielectric phenomenon which often limits detection of faradaic currents [2.99].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Decrease of the detection limit</td>
<td>For impedance microbiology, the detection limit refers to the detection time, i.e. the time required for the threshold concentration of the target microorganisms to be reached. The threshold concentration represents the smallest concentration of microorganisms which can induce a detectable impedance change (resolution of the sensor [2.90, 2.91]) [2.101]. Consequently, shorter detection limits correspond to finer and more reliable measurements provided by the microelectrode.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 2.5 shows the recent qualitative evolution of the sensing area over the last decade (2000 to 2010). It outlines a description of the sensor technology (optical, electrochemical, piezoelectric and magnetoelastic described in more details in Section 2.6.4.2) used with the scale achieved with respect to the sensing element area. A complete review of all sensor technology based techniques for biofilm is outside the scope of this study and will not be further addressed here. In addition to the sensor working principle or technology, the scope of application for microbiology, i.e. direct or indirect biofilm / bacterial cells detection, is highlighted. In this instance, ‘direct’ detection stands for sensing a measurand directly representative of the biological film, e.g. thickness, biomass. Conversely, ‘indirect’ detection is associated with monitoring characteristics that change upon the presence of a biological film or due to metabolic / redox processes within biofilms, e.g. mass transport, CO₂, pH.

The finest scale ranges of the sensing element area achieved are below 100 µm² [2.102]. However, such microsensors with very small sensing areas are appropriate for cell-surface interaction applications as opposed to investigations of biofilms formation. The studies of cell interactions via single macrophage cell-based sensors are of importance for pure microbiology purposes [2.102]. For instance, it may be applicable for quorum sensing to study multicomplex cells interaction, see Section 2.5. Thus, understanding the single cell behaviour in a specified chemical or biological environment is outside the scope of the proposed research since it is unrealistic to the scale of a real system where a biofilm (a more developed structure which encompasses a consortia of cells, organic and inorganic matter, see Section 2.3) can form and develop. As the biofilm chemistry along a metallic surface is non-uniform on a scale below 100 µm [2.99], the sensing area should be dimensioned accordingly. The characteristic length ($L$), e.g. the diameter for a cylindrical-shaped microsensor, corresponding to one sensing area (single-array system) should ideally range below 100 µm. This would enable a complete map of the biofilm chemistry on a metallic surface using for instance, several single arrays with $L \leq 100$ µm.
Table 2.5. Sensing element area evolution over the last past decade with respect to worldwide research groups and biofilm sensing and analysis – list non-exhaustive.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Authors / Country</th>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Scale (sensing element area)</th>
<th>Sensor working principle / sensing application</th>
<th>Year</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Herbert-Guillou et al. (France)</td>
<td>2.122</td>
<td>≈ 80 mm²</td>
<td>Biofilm detection by mass transport modification / biofilm thickness (electrochemical)</td>
<td>1999</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Beyenal et al. (USA)</td>
<td>2.97</td>
<td>≈ 300 µm²</td>
<td>Measure spatially resolved profiles of backscattered light within biofilm / correlation with local effective diffusivity (optical)</td>
<td>2000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Philip-Chandy et al. (England, France)</td>
<td>2.113</td>
<td>≈ 80 mm²</td>
<td>Biofilm detection at the core-cladding interface (evanescent field attenuation by refractive index and absorption / scattering modulation) / biofilm thickness (optical)</td>
<td>2000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Le Coq et al. (France)</td>
<td>2.111</td>
<td>≈ 2.5 mm²</td>
<td>Biochemistry function detection associated with bacterial growth using evanescent wave spectroscopy (optical)</td>
<td>2002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bressel et al. (Germany, South Africa)</td>
<td>2.96</td>
<td>≈ 30,000 µm²</td>
<td>Biomass monitoring / change in the open circuit potential (electrochemical – piezoelectric)</td>
<td>2003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Keinsse et al. (France)</td>
<td>2.112</td>
<td>≈ 1.5 mm²</td>
<td>Biochemistry function detection associated with bacterial growth using evanescent wave spectroscopy (optical)</td>
<td>2003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Beyenal et al. (USA)</td>
<td>2.108</td>
<td>≈ 300 µm²</td>
<td>Measure of CO₂ concentration profiles within biofilm (electrochemical)</td>
<td>2003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ruan et al. (USA)</td>
<td>2.104</td>
<td>≈ 28,000 µm²</td>
<td>Biomass monitoring / binding properties (biosensor – magnetoelastic)</td>
<td>2003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Basu et al. (USA)</td>
<td>2.123</td>
<td>≈ 18 mm²</td>
<td>Biofilm detection (change in interfacial properties) / binding properties (biosensor – electrochemical)</td>
<td>2004</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Beyenal et al. (USA)</td>
<td>2.110</td>
<td>≈ 300 µm²</td>
<td>Detection and quantification of fluorescent light intensity distribution within biofilm (optical)</td>
<td>2004</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reipa et al. (USA)</td>
<td>2.116</td>
<td>≈ 3 cm²</td>
<td>Biomass monitoring (piezoelectric)</td>
<td>2006</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spiller et al. (Germany)</td>
<td>2.124</td>
<td>≈ 2.5 mm²</td>
<td>Cell growth detection / biomass monitoring (biosensor – electrochemical)</td>
<td>2006</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oliver et al. (Northern Ireland)</td>
<td>2.125, 2.126</td>
<td>≈ 1 mm²</td>
<td>Biofilm detection (change in interfacial properties) / biofilm formation stages (electrochemical)</td>
<td>2006</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guntupalli et al. (USA)</td>
<td>2.105, 2.106</td>
<td>≈ 6,000 µm²</td>
<td>Biomass monitoring / binding properties (biosensor – magnetoelastic)</td>
<td>2006/2007</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Miečinskas et al. (Lithuania)</td>
<td>2.117</td>
<td>≈ 0.5 cm²</td>
<td>Biomass monitoring (piezoelectric)</td>
<td>2007</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Veiseh et al. (USA)</td>
<td>2.102</td>
<td>≈ 25, 100 and 400 µm²</td>
<td>Cell-based detection / binding properties (biosensor – optical)</td>
<td>2007</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2.6.4.2 Type of transduction-based sensor technology

Applied microorganism sensors reported in the research literature (in Table 2.5) are outlined below with regard to the transduction used (the action of converting the measurand such as the measured quantity, property or condition into a usable electrical / optical output [2.90,2.91]). The more mature approaches investigated are electrochemical and optical microsensors [2.20]. However, piezoelectric sensors using the quartz crystal microbalance (QCM) working principle have also been reported in 1993 to monitor the growth of a *Pseudomonas cepacia* biofilm for several days [2.103].

**Magnetoelastic**

More recently, research has been carried out using magnetoelastic sensors [2.104-2.106]. Magnetoelastic thin film sensors can be considered as the magnetic analogue of surface acoustic wave (SAW) sensors or QCM devices [2.90,2.91]. The working principle of mass-sensitive magnetoelastic sensors is described as follows. In response to an externally applied time-varying magnetic field, steady-state or pulse, ribbon-like magnetoelastic sensors mechanically vibrate at a characteristic resonance frequency [2.104-2.106]. In this instance, the piezoelectric transduction is similar to that for the magnetoelastic sensor and both of the techniques are used for biomass monitoring, see Table 2.5. The advantage of the magnetostrictive platform is the capability of doing remote and wireless measurements [2.104-2.106]. However, the magnetoelastic sensor drawbacks for biomass monitoring are listed as follows:

- All the magnetoelastic sensors reported in the literature for bacterial biofilm monitoring / disruption are biosensors involving specific immunosensors (complex antibody / antigen) [2.104-2.106]. In this instance, biosensors are not really suitable for the very demanding working environment inherent to marine applications (very few of developed / commercialised biosensors have been reported in the seawater environment and applied in routine analysis) [2.107].
- Magnetoelastic sensors are composed of ribbons such as Metglas alloy 2826 (composition Fe_{40}Ni_{40}P_{14}B_{6}), which can potentially corrode in seawater (inducing another parameter to control in addition to the bacterial biofilm monitoring). Therefore, such sensors need to be pre-coated, e.g. with a ≈ 100 nm layer of gold (Au) applied by thermal evaporation [2.104].
• This technique for biofilm analysis has only recently been proposed, as such the reported high sensitivity needs to be interpreted with care (mass sensitivity of a magnetoelastic sensor with a fundamental frequency of ≈ 367 kHz comparable with the sensitivity of QCM having a fundamental frequency of 5 MHz) and detection limit (magnetoelastic biosensor: \(10^2\) cells mL\(^{-1}\), bienzyme electrochemical biosensor: \(6 \times 10^2\) cells mL\(^{-1}\), electrochemical impedance immunobiosensor: \(6 \times 10^4\) cells mL\(^{-1}\)) [2.104].

Overall, the limitations of magnetoelastic sensors mean that this type of transduction is not appropriate for the project. Work carried out using fibre-optic microprobes (in addition to electrochemical microelectrodes [2.108]) primarily focus on the study of biochemistry functions within the biofilm [2.109]. Usually, microelectrode tips are small, \(i.e.\) typically less than 20 \(\mu m\) tip diameter to coincide with the size of a bacterium, thus offering favourable conditions to measure the concentration distribution of various chemical species using interfacial changes in current or potential [2.82]. For instance, analyte-selective microelectrodes to detect \(O_2\), pH, nitrate (\(NO_3^-\)) ions, \(S^{2-}\) ions, ammonium (\(NH_4^+\)) ions, nitrous oxide \((N_2O)\), chlorine, \(CO_2\) and glucose have been developed [2.20,2.82]. Although microelectrodes have enhanced characteristics (in Table 2.4) compared to macroelectrodes in terms of sensitivity, stability, selectivity, reproducibility, accuracy and response time, they are however fragile, difficult to manufacture, need calibration, and are subject to interferences and potential drifts of the signal, and also can be destructive to the biofilm. Nonetheless, microelectrodes have enabled to measure spatial and temporal concentration gradients to develop fundamental understanding of several physiological processes and structural heterogeneity within biofilms [2.82]. Although these investigations on biofilm biochemistry diverge from the biofilm monitoring on metallic surfaces (interfacial properties), they can provide insightful background to support the interpretations of the sensing response. These research works can include Beyenal et al. [2.97,2.108,2.110], Le Coq et al. [2.111] and Keirsse et al. [2.112], and are summarised in Table 2.5.
In operating systems, optical fibre devices that use the absorption and scattering of light by a biofilm have been integrated into pipe walls [2.3.2.69]. In practice, light is conducted by the sending fibre from underneath to the surface and scattered light by deposits is detected in return. Similarly, Beyenal et al. have developed a tapered fibre-optic microsensor using a 10 µm tip diameter to measure the distribution of backscattered light in biofilms [2.20]. The principle of detection (using optical fibre devices) has some limitations since the assessment of the deposit thickness depends on the intensity of back-scattered light, where optical losses across a deposit layer can affect the measures. Consequently, optical fibre devices are not suitable to investigate thick biofilms. These devices rely on the principle of differential turbidity measurement (DTM) readings between a turbidity meter in a clean and fouled environment. In this instance, the change measured between the devices operating in the control (clean) and turbid milieu is indicative of deposits. Similarly, apparatuses that measure heat transfer, pressure drop, and also biofouling thickness (described in Section 2.4.4) lie in the same category relevant to deposit measurements. Although these detection devices can be used to evaluate surface deterioration, their main drawback is probably their inability to provide essential information on the nature of fouling (inorganic such as clay / silt, corrosion and scale deposits, and also biological fouling) [2.3]. Likewise, the experimental configuration of Le Coq et al. [2.111] and Keirsse et al. [2.112] is such that the wave penetration depth only allows probing of the top surface (a few microns deep), which may also suggest some concerns to investigate thick biofilms. Another issue of relevance for bacterial biofilms adhered on a surface, is the requirement for the fibre-optic sensor tip to align measurements with the surface of the system investigated (exact position relative to the metal / biofilm interface) [2.108].

Although, an optical device has a number of advantages over an electrochemical system, for instance chemical inertness, immunity to electromagnetic noise, internal reference (thus, there is no need for reference and counter electrodes) and geometric versatility [2.20], its utilisation for the project is limited by the following reasons:

- Optical techniques using; for instance, a wavelength of light (\(\lambda = 660\) nm) are subject to interference such as optical absorption in the UV-visible region of the spectrum due to the formation of algae, chlorophyll and coloured deposits [2.113,2.114], which makes interpretations difficult in order to explain the
significance of the sensing response with regard to marine bacterial growth and extent. However, adjacent spectroscopy methods to detect autofluorescence by biomolecules may support differentiation between organic and biological material in the deposit [2.3.2.69,2.115].

- The correlation between the core-cladding interface (in optical fibre devices) and the physical property of the optical sensor is not evident (evanescent field attenuation by refractive index and absorption and scattering modulation), where the core of the optical fibre represents a cylinder (usually plastic or glass) surrounded by a medium with a lower refractive index (cladding) for light to travel along the fibre’s length [2.91].

Due to the discussed limitations of optical sensors (interferences, non-trivial correlation between the sensing response and biofilms), this type of transduction will not be considered further for the proposed work.

**Piezoelectric**

The QCM as discussed in Table 2.5 [2.96,2.116,2.117] is a sensitive technique to study solid-solution interfaces based on a shift of the quartz crystal resonance frequency, which is typically a thin 300 µm circular plate oscillating at 5 MHz [2.82] due to interaction with solution components such as bacteria [2.117]. Interestingly for marine environment it was shown that QCM can be used as a gravimetric device since the mass sensitivity in a liquid environment can be comparable with that in air or vacuum [2.117]. The advantage of QCM devices relative to electrochemical sensors is the higher sensitivity \( \approx \text{ng cm}^{-2} \). For instance, the mass of a single cell of *Escherichia coli* from QCM data was estimated to be 0.8 picograms [2.117]. This can correspond to the estimated detection limit for a standard QCM, \( i.e. \, 3 \times 10^5 \, \text{cells cm}^{-2} \) [2.82,2.118]. However, the main disadvantage of this technique is probably the theory associated with the working principle of QCM. Indeed, the Sauerbrey’s equation upon which QCM relies (relating the resonant frequency shift and the mass variation of the film deposited on a crystal surface) is valid only when the attached film is rigid (similar rigidity to that of the quartz [2.82]), thin and does not experience critical shear forces during crystal vibration. These considerations may underlie minimalist concepts for the reasons as follows:
• Biofilms are soft with potential time-dependent viscoelastic characteristics (accounting for the secretion of EPS matrix, pili / fimbriae) and their thickness can exceed the length of the shear wave ($\lambda = 0.24 \, \mu m$ in pure water) that is radiated into the contacting fluid by the oscillating crystal surface, i.e. vibrational motion dampened with the distance from the surface [2.8, 2.96, 2.116, 2.117]. Consequently, suspended cells (not directly attached to the surface) may not be affected by the shear wave and subsequently not detected [2.82].

• The response of QCM devices can potentially be influenced by hydraulic pressure or temperature and then lead to signal drifts (that could be misinterpreted as biomass changes) [2.8, 2.118]. In flow-through devices maintained at constant temperature and pressure, additional non-linearity in the calibration curve due to biofilm mechanical behaviour (viscoelastic properties) have also been reported [2.82].

• Significantly, surface roughness ($R_a$), non-uniform mass sensitivity, chemical adsorption and longitudinal standing waves can also affect the frequency-dependent signal of the QCM [2.82].

Likewise, a few SAW microsensors have been proposed in the microbial biofilm research [2.119]. These sensors are wireless devices and usually consist of a SAW resonator (61 MHz) and a pair of conductive electrodes connected in the feedback circuit with a radio frequency amplifier [2.119]. They have already been employed in the bioanalytical research fields, for instance in the determination of urea, pancreatic lipase or total salt concentration in serum [2.119]. Based on this working principle, a novel system operating at ultra-high frequency (314.5 MHz) to minimise polarisation effects of the probe has been developed for the assessment of the microbial count in a biological culture [2.119]. It was shown that this device can offer better signal to noise ratio (after inoculation with Escherichia coli) than a piezoelectric quartz crystal sensor oscillating at 8 MHz, whereas the stability of the compared sensing techniques are equivalent. Similarly to the magnetoelastic sensors, the performance of the SAW microsensors for biofilm research need to be further addressed. Nevertheless, new QCM approaches have been developed such as piezoelectric-excited millimetre-sized cantilever (PEMC) sensors for bacterial biofilm monitoring (more sensitive and smaller) [2.96, 2.116, 2.117]. In addition, QCM can be combined with other electrochemical sensing approaches to form electrochemical quartz crystal microbalance (EQCM) devices [2.117]. Kreth et al. showed that real-time EQCM investigations can inform on the kinetics of biofilm formation [2.120]. Therefore, this technique may have potential interest to this multidisciplinary project as proposed in [2.82] the QCM technology with
temperature and pressure compensations could be a suitable detector for the presence of a biofilm. Nowadays, the piezoelectric devices are probably most relevant to the study of mechanical characteristics of biofilms, exploiting the non-linear relationship between the frequency dependent response and the mass of biofilm (biomass) attached [2.82]. In this instance, a mechatronic surface sensor (MSS) was developed by Pereira et al., demonstrating that the MSS response was not only influenced by the presence but also on the viscoelastic properties of the adhered deposit [2.121]. Although further applications in biofilm research should emerge from piezoelectric sensors in the future, i.e. when advancements in the theory of soft films and transducer technology are made [2.82], piezoelectric techniques will not be considered within this project.

**Electrochemical**

Finally, the last sensing technique for consideration is an electrochemical sensing approach; [2.96, 2.108, 2.122-2.126] in Table 2.5, for the following reasons:

- It is a mature technique for bacterial biofilm monitoring [2.20].
- It may enable a more comprehensible correlation with bacterial biofilm formation on a metal surface (mass transport and interfacial changes discussed in Section 2.6.5).
- It has been employed to monitor variables that assess damage to the metal and it helps to determine the mechanism of attack in MIC [2.82].

Among the electrochemical techniques for biofilm sensing, the biosensors (using bio-receptors) used by Basu et al. [2.123] and Spiller et al. [2.124] are not suitable for this current project (for the same reasons as the magnetoelastic sensors). Likewise, electrochemical microsensors using a small tip diameter, e.g. Beyenal et al. [2.108], are not appropriate for this study (see the discussion on fibre-optic microprobes). In addition, open circuit potential (OCP) and electrochemical noise (EN) methods can be used as indicators for microbial activity, e.g. microbially influenced ennoblement of OCP on SS [2.127]. In the OCP technique, the potential difference between a metal probe and a reference electrode is measured, whereas the fluctuations in potential or current are monitored using EN at OCP. However, these techniques are qualitative, usually difficult to interpret without corroborative assessment (statistical evaluation and interpretation of the signal noise spectra for EN) and do not provide a direct correlation with the presence of a biofilm on a metallic surface [2.118]. Small changes in
electrochemical variables can be monitored when a biofilm forms on a metal surface and usually these changes can be indicative of biofilm induced surface processes [2.82]. In this instance, techniques used to investigate MIC primary focus on metabolic products (used as characteristic detectable substances to detect the occurrence of a particular organism) and not necessarily on the biofilm that can potentially be responsible for a corrosion process [2.118]. Dual-cells (two galvanically coupled electrodes separated by a selectively-permeable membrane but also connected by a continuous and constant flow of electrolyte through the cells) have been the first proposed method to study MIC [2.128]. In this configuration, a zero resistance ammeter can measure the modification of current flowing through the electrodes between a biotic and a sterile environments, i.e. one cell in the presence of microorganism while the other is sterile [2.128, 2.129]. Overall, electrochemical techniques to study MIC concern specific laboratory scale experiments that should provide insight into more complex real systems.

Similarly, commercialised on-line electrochemical sensors using electrical polarisation methods, such as the BioGEORGE and the BioX, are utilised for monitoring of biofilm and biocorrosion, and also the effectiveness of biocide dosing strategies within marine piping systems [2.3, 2.67, 2.130-2.132]. Biofilm formation and development on the sensing element of electrochemical sensors can be associated with the measured galvanic current between a SS pipe and an iron (Fe) anode (BioX) or with the change in current flowing between two SS, e.g. UNS S30400 or UNS S31600, or Ti electrodes (BioGEORGE) [2.2, 2.67, 2.128]. Likewise, Bressel et al. [2.96] performed cyclic voltammetry (CV) used as a corroborative technique (in addition to confocal microscopy) for the QCM microsensor to study microbial biofilms. This work has outlined a detailed description of a series of electrochemical processes (Section 2.6.5.3), which can occur when a biofilm develops onto a noble surface. The RDE used by Herbert-Guillou et al. [2.122] (see Section 2.4.4.4 for a description of the working principle) consists in an electrochemical method based on mass transport modification [2.128]. This well-established technique for biofilm sensing / thickness assessment (using changes in the steady-state current of cathodically polarised electrodes) has already been tested inside piping systems [2.122], thus will not be considered for this current study.
However, the main concern with polarisation methods is the application of high negative and positive potentials, e.g. \(-1.000\) and \(+1.000\) V vs. a reference potential, which can modify the biological growth environment \([2.82]\) (discussed in Section 2.6.6.2 for the Au surface). In this instance, it was shown that cathodic polarisation can interfere with the bacterial growth process and direct-current (dc) can affect the biofilm structure, thus suggesting that polarisation techniques are debatable for monitoring undisturbed biofilms \([2.133, 2.134]\). Likewise, it was demonstrated that biofilm established on a cathodically polarised platinum (Pt) wire can expand, whereas an overall contraction was observed when the wire was anodic \([2.135]\). This was explained by changes in pH in the vicinity of the electrodes (polarised at \(\pm 1.300\) V with a current of 50 \(\mu\)A, thus corresponding to a current density of 3.1 mA cm\(^{-2}\)), i.e. anodic oxidation of H\(_2\)O favouring acid conditions (Equation 2.21) and cathodic reduction of H\(_2\)O producing hydroxyl (OH\(^-\)) ions (Equation 2.22) \([2.135]\).

\[
\begin{align*}
2\text{H}_2\text{O} & \rightarrow 4\text{H}^+ + \text{O}_2 + 4\text{e}^- \quad (2.21) \\
2\text{H}_2\text{O} + 2\text{e}^- & \rightarrow \text{H}_2 + 2\text{OH}^- \quad (2.22)
\end{align*}
\]

More precisely, bacterial cells can be influenced by external excitations greater than potential differences across biological membranes (+0.140 to +0.200 V potential drops for a 10 nm distance across the thickness of the cell membrane), which play a major role in biological metabolic and physiological processes \([2.136]\). Hence, applying high-intensity fields to the cells, i.e. in the kilovolt-per-centimetre range or superior to this potential window, can disturb the delicate cellular electrical equilibria and cause membrane perturbations routinely used in electroporation \([2.137]\).

Conversely, small electrical perturbations (\(\pm 10\) mV\(_{rms}\)) applied to biofilm systems are reported not to affect the activity and the number of sessile bacteria within a biofilm \([2.82]\) (detailed in Section 2.6.6). Based on this concept, the impedimetric sensor developed by Oliver et al. \([2.125, 2.126]\) has been used for pathogenic bacterial biofilm sensing. Recently, Bayoudh et al. discussed, for the first time, the use of electrochemical impedance spectroscopy (EIS) within a flow chamber to detect bacterial adhesion \([2.55]\). The results in \([2.55, 2.125, 2.126]\), although informative of an interfacial change in impedance over time, did not fully address the electrochemical reaction occurring at the interface in addition to the causes of this reaction. Similarly, recent studies have proposed that the interfacial capacitance can be sensitive to the bacterial adhesion and development on electrode surfaces, thus monitoring the initial and mature stages of biofilm growth \([2.138-2.140]\).
2.6.4.3 Justification of the biofilm sensing strategy adopted

As mentioned in [2.118], the analysis in Section 2.6.4.2 highlights that a high number of analytical detection methods can potentially be used for bacterial biofilm monitoring, whereas the suitability of these techniques in complex operating systems usually restricts the number of candidates for feasible methods. Also, most of online biofilm monitoring techniques (except bioluminescence signals generated by an enzymatic reaction within biological metabolisms) rely on passive responses (that are detected and subsequently processed for engineering purposes) to input signals transmitted to metal surfaces, where the presence of a biofilm can modify the investigated surface and its environment [2.118]. In the scope of research, monitoring biofilms is essential since it can help understand fundamental processes within biofilms, which may ultimately support the development of tailor-made devices suitable for operating engineering systems. As pointed out by Lewandowski [2.118] and Roßteuscher [2.141], the challenge is, however, to be able to understand the significance of the measured signal with regard to features describing biofilms and to clearly identify the parameters of relevance to gain knowledge in the biofilm field. These considerations should help industrials define both a consensus on appropriate biofilm monitoring techniques and threshold levels of interference for particular industrial systems, and also provide insight in biocide concentrations required to control biofilms in-service [2.3].

As a result of the analysis in Section 2.6.4.2, EIS has been selected as an electrochemical method capable of monitoring interfacial and mass transport changes on and nearby metallic surfaces without perturbing the environmental growth (non-destructive) [2.82], see Section 2.6.5 for a detailed description of the EIS technique. Although electrochemical sensors using electrical polarisation have been adopted by industrials, they do not provide a full description of the biofouling mechanisms involved, when similarly (according to evidence addressed in the published literature [2.133-2.137]) they can disturb the biofilm, i.e. the measurand for this current project. In this instance, laboratory scale experiments using EIS (and CV to support the use of the EIS technique) in a well-controlled environment, e.g. continuous culture flow cell systems, may provide an important step in better understanding of the sensing response significance, which is to date not fully addressed in the published literature [2.55,2.125,2.126,2.138-2.140]. Subsequently, strong knowledge of the interfacial properties inherent to biofilm will help define a protocol for biofilm disruption to ultimately deploy a suitable in situ dosing strategy when required [2.3]. Therefore, this
current study represents a unique opportunity to develop a clear understanding between the marine bacterial biofilm (formation and development, and also disruption) on a metal surface and the corresponding electrochemical response (using the EIS technique scarcely used in the field of ocean sensing [2.93]), which overall would support the design, development and future deployment of non-invasive, robust, reliable (accurate and reproducible), intelligent and low maintenance biofilm monitoring devices for marine environment (concerns that were pointed out by Busalmen et al. [2.133] and Denuault [2.93]). As stated by Nivens et al. [2.81], a single monitoring technique may not be sufficient for a full understanding of the engineering system. Consequently, microscopy techniques described in Sections 2.6.3 and 2.7 will be required to corroborate the EIS response in addition to the knowledge gained from the published literature, e.g. bacterial biofilm colonisation model on a metal surface developed by Bressel et al. [2.96] in Section 2.6.5.3, which was supported by confocal microscopy analyses plus cyclovoltammetry measurements.

2.6.5 Biofilm sensing using EIS

2.6.5.1 An electrochemical technique for biofilm sensing

The EIS working principle relies on the application of a small sinusoidal perturbation (potential or current) to an electrochemical cell, i.e. a potentiostat or an electrochemical interface, together with a frequency response analyser (FRA) or spectrum analyser, which covers a wide range of frequencies, typically in the order of 0.01 to 100,000 Hz [2.142,2.143]. The potentiostat connections consist of a counter electrode that provides current to the electrochemical cell, a working electrode, which allows measurement of the current through the cell and a reference electrode for potential measurements [2.142,2.143]. One important characteristic of the potentiostat is its ability to maintain dc conditions on the working electrode interface while the FRA is performing the impedance analysis. A dc steady-state current can be applied to the electrochemical cell (under load conditions) or an experiment can be run at the OCP to investigate the interfacial impedance [2.142-2.144]. The multi-frequency excitation allows: (i) the measurement of several electrochemical reactions, which occur at different rates and (ii) the study of electrochemical interfacial properties [2.142-2.144]. In EIS, by defining the relation between applied stimulus and output quantity, the system impedance and the phase angle (the phase difference between measured current and applied potential) are obtained [2.142-2.144]. The concept of impedance, originally introduced to describe the response of a system composed of capacitances, resistances and inductances, was extended to electrochemical systems, where
numerous processes contribute to the relation between the current and potential [2.142-2.145]. Thus, based on impedance and phase angle measurements, it is possible to evaluate several processes such as charge transfer (including determination of electron transfer rate), film conductivity, double layer and redox capacitance and charge carriers diffusion coefficients [2.145]. Rapid physical phenomena in Figure 2.17 tend to occur at higher frequencies while slow physical mechanisms are observed at lower frequencies (i.e. the frequency is inversely proportional to the period). Charge transfer and ionic diffusion (Figure 2.17) are the most prominent physical phenomena likely to occur within the working range acceptable to make suitable electrochemical measurements [2.142-2.145].

![Figure 2.17. Physical frequency dependent phenomena in electrochemistry.](image)

In practice, EIS has been used in the characterisation of biomaterial-functionalised electrodes and biocatalytic transformations / electrochemical reactions [2.146-2.149]. It has also been proven to be very effective in mechanistic studies of a wide range of corrosion phenomena involving MIC [2.129]. In addition, EIS provides repeatable and accurate measurements of surface conditions such as adsorption and desorption processes, charge transfer rate and redox-active centres determinations at the electrode surfaces, as well as information about biofilm behaviours (interactions of biological molecules to provide information such as surface loading, binding constants, rate constants and surface reactivity) [2.53, 2.146, 2.149], see Section 2.6.5.3.
2.6.5.2 Analysis of the EIS response

Analysis of the electrochemical impedance data can be achieved using different measurement models, specifically either equivalent circuit (EC) or mathematical models [2.142-2.145]. The application of EC models is based on the analogy between an electrochemical cell and an RLC electrical circuit of resistors, inductors, and capacitors [2.142]. The similarity of the electrical double layer to a parallel plate capacitor (Helmholtz model and non-faradaic processes) and the interfacial resistance to charge transfer (faradaic processes) to a resistance can lead to a representation of an electrode / electrolyte interface by a resistor, e.g. charge transfer resistance ($R_{ct}$) and a capacitor, e.g. double layer capacitance ($C_{dl}$) in parallel [2.142-2.147]. The current that flows through this electrochemical interface is conducted by the ions in solution [2.142]. The resistive effect on their migration (movement of charge species due to a potential gradient [2.42,2.150]) can be represented by the resistance of solution ($R_s$). Likewise, diffusion of species from the bulk solution (infinite diffusion due to the movement of species down a concentration gradient [2.42,2.150]) to the electrode surface can be defined as the Warburg impedance ($Z_W$) [2.142-2.147]. The difference in phase between current and potential is the result of the introduction of capacitive elements in a circuit. Because of this, a common representation for impedance in systems composed by resistors and capacitors is through a phase diagram in which the impedance shows a real (resistive) and an imaginary (capacitive) component [2.142-2.147]. This phase diagram representing the impedance in the complex plane, i.e. the Nyquist diagram, is also associated with a graph, which shows the modulus of the impedance and the phase shift, i.e. the Bode diagram, for different frequencies [2.142-2.147].

Both the Nyquist and Bode diagrams are used (Figure 2.18) to interpret the EIS data [2.151]. The Bode plot roughly indicates the number of elements / components constituting the total impedance of the related electrochemical cell while the Nyquist plots reveals their possible behaviour [2.151].
Figure 2.18. Interpretations of Nyquist and Bode diagrams using EC models, adapted from [2.151].

Usually, an EC model is used to fit the EIS data (utilising readily available programs such as EQUIVCRT by Boukamp or proprietary software [2.142,2.152]) in order to quantify the interface [2.152]. However, if care is not taken in the overall approach of representing the data and modelling the electrochemical cell, then errors and uncertainties can occur especially for the inexperienced user [2.148,2.153].
### 2.6.5.3 Schematic of bacterial biofilm for electrochemical detection

The presence of a bacterial biofilm in Figure 2.19 can modify the electrochemical properties and the mass transport at and/or near the working electrode interface, thus ultimately altering the interfacial impedance response [2.96]. The mass transport induced by biological activity mostly accounts for diffusion (along concentration gradients) and migration (due to the electric field across the biofilm) processes [2.42, 2.53, 2.150]. Whereas, convection (the movement of species resulting from a mechanical force) although present results from the environmental hydrodynamic regimes (by stirring, agitating the electrolyte solution or flowing it through the electrochemical cell) [2.42, 2.150].
Figure 2.19. Bacterial biofilm colonisation: (a) a Ti surface immersed for 1 week in natural seawater at the NOC pontoon, (b) an overview of typical biofilm morphology and (c) processes detected by electrochemical measurements, (b) and (c) adapted from [2.96].

Figure 2.19(a) shows a bacterial biofilm attached to a metallic surface. Distinct bacterial clusters are clearly seen in the presence of EPS matrix. Figure 2.19(b) schematically illustrates that bacterial biofilms consist of a heterogeneous structure of EPS matrix and bacteria cells randomly distributed on a metallic surface [2.1], thus inducing different detectable interfacial responses [2.96]. A more detailed illustration of the metal/seawater interface in Figure 2.19(c) shows a range of competing electrochemical processes [2.96]. Overall, direct electron transfer to redox-active centres deep within the EPS matrix is generally not observed, see Figure 2.19(c)(i).
However, where the ORR is the prevailing reaction in neutral / alkaline conditions [2.42], mechanisms of enhancement of the ORR by enzymatic processes have been proposed [2.59]. They are associated with enzymatic catalysis by aerobic microorganisms with the decomposition of an intermediate reactant (H$_2$O$_2$ in Equation 2.14) resulting in an autocatalytic cycle through which the reduction current density is increased [2.59], see Section 2.4.3.2. The exact nature of the ORR mechanism still remains to be determined. One pathway in analogy with biological fuel cell [2.50-2.54] (see Figure 2.12 in Section 2.4.3.2) is presented. The biofilm system on a metallic surface in Figure 2.19(c)(ii) can correspond to a galvanic cell composed of an anode and a cathode. In this instance, the anodic process is governed by the oxidation of soluble organic material via respiratory enzymes with H$_2$O and CO$_2$ the products of the anodic reaction. In contrast, an enhanced ORR by enzymatic activities at the outer biofilm region is prevalent at the cathode. Similarly, sessile bacteria can play a pivotal role in the charge exchange with a metallic surface, where the charge transfer occurs to or from the bacterium surface [2.55]. Whereas, hydrogen adsorption and reduction in Figure 2.19(c)(iii) has been reported to be inhibited by the colonization of the surface. After biocide treatments, results indicate a mechanism based on direct electron transfer to enzymes or other reductive agents entrapped in the EPS matrix may act as another pathway, see Figure 2.19(c)(iv). Also, bacterial EPS has been shown to be redox-active in Figure 2.19(c)(v) by allowing reductive and oxidative processes to occur.

Importantly, a suitable metallic surface utilised as an electrochemical probe operating in a well-defined seawater environment should be able to detect the predominant electrochemical reaction among the interfacial competing processes in Figure 2.19, see Chapter 5. For instance, it may be predictable that a noble metal electrode immersed a few days (to study initial microbial fouling) in continuous aerated (non polluted) seawater would probably undergo the overall reaction in Figure 2.19(c)(ii), i.e. the enzymatic enhanced ORR.
2.6.6 Au working electrode

2.6.6.1 Suitability of Au as a candidate-working electrode

The surface of the working electrode can be regarded as the sensing element of the sensor, see Table 2.5. Therefore, the selection of a suitable material is crucial for this PhD project. Metallic surfaces for marine applications are subject to corrosion mainly due to the saline properties of seawater, e.g. presence of aggressive Cl⁻ species. Likewise, metallic structures may suffer from surface degradation, resulting in the formation of corrosion products (hydrated oxides) deposit on the surface [2.44]. Subsequently, the corrosion plus hydrolysis reactions can lead to oxide fouling of the metallic surface, see Section 2.4.3.2. Ideally, the sensing element hence needs to be inert (to ensure stability of the sensing area and reliability of the electrochemical sensor) in order to monitor marine bacterial biofilms [2.93]. The electrochemical performances of passive metal surfaces, e.g. Cu alloys, SS and Ti (Sections 2.4.2 and 2.4.3) in seawater [2.17,2.37] or specific studies of MIC, e.g. SRB on mild steels (Section 2.1), have already been detailed in the literature [2.1.2.2]. Similarly, Ti and SS are currently used by the commercialised / patented electrochemical probes (Section 2.6.4.2) for marine biofouling and biocorrosion, and also biocide effectiveness assessment [2.2,2.3,2.67,2.128,2.130-2.132]. Consequently, this PhD thesis will not address the use of corrosion resistant metallic (passive oxide film) surfaces in Table 2.2.

Conversely, Au has been selected using Tables 2.2 and 2.6 (where in addition to the galvanic series for alloys in Table 2.2, the electrochemical series in Table 2.6 is informative on the corrosion properties of pure metals) as a good candidate since it is a noble metal, where (interestingly for noble surfaces) a linear relationship associated with the biofilm thickness has been proposed, thus suggesting a potential application for monitoring the growth of biological films [2.133]. In addition, Au substrates are commonly used in microbiology for their bio-compatibility properties [2.134,2.154,2.155]. The published research literature also mentions its use for biofilm sensing plus chloride media (seawater) applications using EIS [2.96,2.99,2.123,2.125,2.126,2.138,2.156]. Moreover, Au has often been utilised in a range of microtechnologies, e.g. multi / interdigitated microelectrode arrays [2.93,2.154,2.155,2.157-2.159]. In contrast to Au, Pt (Tables 2.2 and 2.6) has been proposed to minimise electrode oxidation processes in seawater when applying high positive potentials [2.160]. However, this consideration (for the anodic reaction) is
unlikely to affect the monitoring (for a non-polarised electrode) of a predominant cathodic reaction, *i.e.* the ORR in seawater [2.42]. An alternative low cost candidate to Au may be silver (Ag) but its electrochemical behaviour in seawater, *i.e.* electroformation of insoluble silver chloride (AgCl) [2.161-2.163], and its reported antifouling properties [2.164-2.166] would need to be addressed for this PhD project.

Table 2.6. Electrochemical series. Standard conditions (25 °C; 1 atm; H$_2$O; unit activities; metals present in their standard states), adapted from [2.42].

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Electrode reaction:</th>
<th>$E^0_\text{e} / V$ (SHE)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Au$^{3+} + 3e^-$</td>
<td>Au</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O$_2 + 4H^+ + 4e^-$</td>
<td>2H$_2$O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pt$^{2+} + 2e^-$</td>
<td>Pt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pd$^{2+} + 2e^-$</td>
<td>Pd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ag$^{+} + e^-$</td>
<td>Ag</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cu$^{+} + e^-$</td>
<td>Cu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O$_2 + 2H_2O^+ + 4e^-$</td>
<td>4OH$^-$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cu$^{2+} + 2e^-$</td>
<td>Cu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2H$^+ + 2e^-$</td>
<td>H$_2$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pb$^{2+} + 2e^-$</td>
<td>Pb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sn$^{2+} + 2e^-$</td>
<td>Sn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mo$^{3+} + 3e^-$</td>
<td>Mo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ni$^{2+} + 2e^-$</td>
<td>Ni</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Co$^{2+} + 2e^-$</td>
<td>Co</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cd$^{2+} + 2e^-$</td>
<td>Cd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fe$^{2+} + 2e^-$</td>
<td>Fe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cr$^{3+} + 3e^-$</td>
<td>Cr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zn$^{2+} + 2e^-$</td>
<td>Zn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cr$^{2+} + 2e^-$</td>
<td>Cr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V$^{2+} + 2e^-$</td>
<td>V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mn$^{2+} + 2e^-$</td>
<td>Mn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ti$^{2+} + 2e^-$</td>
<td>Ti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Al$^{3+} + 3e^-$</td>
<td>Al</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ti$^{3+} + 3e^-$</td>
<td>Ti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U$^{3+} + 3e^-$</td>
<td>U</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mg$^{2+} + 2e^-$</td>
<td>Mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Na$^+ + e^-$</td>
<td>Na</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ca$^{2+} + 2e^-$</td>
<td>Ca</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>K$^+ + e^-$</td>
<td>K</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Li$^+ + e^-$</td>
<td>Li</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Overall, biofouling is dependent on the material surface [2.2,2.3], thus it is predictable that the fouling properties of Au would be different from that of other candidates, *e.g.* on passive alloys, where the formation of oxide films play an important role in the reaction kinetics [2.2,2.17]. For instance, it has been reported that biofilms of *Pseudoalteromonas fluorescens* were more extensive on Al plates than on either brass or Cu pipes (attributed to the toxic effects of Cu towards macrofouling in Section 2.4.3.2) [2.3]. Likewise, more biofouling was observed on Ti heat exchanger tubes than on brass pipes [2.3]. This suggests that corroborative tests (on various metallic
surfaces) and safety engineering factors would be necessary in-service to define the thresholds of interference for biofouling discussed in Section 2.4.4.1.

2.6.6.2 Preliminary concerns for Au prior testing

A major concern of biofilms on metals is the dependence of surface topography, where biofilm mass is usually reported to be more pronounced on rough surfaces (and conversely less important on smooth metals) [2.3]. This can be explained by a size criterion (individual cells are smaller than crevices) combined with a topographic-induced behaviour of biofilms against adverse flow conditions (irregular rough surfaces are suitable niches for bacterial cells exposed to high shear stress) [2.3, 2.27]. Surface heterogeneities can have significant effects during the early stages of biofilm formation and development, however this influence becomes negligible when biofilm thickness exceeds the surface roughness (although the accumulation process can facilitate the anchoring of biofilms to rough surfaces) [2.3]. However, perfectly smooth industrial surfaces correspond to an idealistic concept (surface roughness depends on the manufacturing process) where no engineering surfaces (smooth or rough) can escape fouling [2.1-2.3].

With regard to these considerations, the Au electrodes will need to be ground and polished (to a final smooth surface roughness, $R_a$) before use (detailed in Chapter 4) to ensure controllability of the finished surfaces. Ideally, a further step of electropolishing, e.g. in an acid solution, to remove material from the metallic workpiece would be necessary for enhanced quality of the Au surface. However, this electrochemical step after the mechanical grinding and polishing method may be inappropriate in order to offer greater flexibility in material preparation for this PhD project. Alternatively, a suitable potential waveform (potential square wave by holding the potential at +0.800 V vs. a Cu anode for 1 s, whereas a potential switch to −0.450 V vs. a Cu anode is used for 12 s to monitor DO) can be used to electrochemically recondition the sensing surface, where electrodes continuously operating in seawater can lose their catalytic properties activity and / or be poisoned by heavy metals, e.g. electroplating at the potential for the ORR [2.93, 2.160, 2.167, 2.168]. This represents a cleaning protocol that may be addressed for in service conditions.
Nevertheless, polarisation methods would be rejected for laboratory experiments (in this current study) to preserve the biological environment since dc excitations can affect biofilm and the bacterial metabolism, see Section 2.6.4.2. In this instance, it has been reported that the growth of bacterial cells attached to Au surface in sodium chloride (NaCl) media was primarily affected under positive polarisation, i.e. an exponential growth was observed following an applied potential of +0.500 V vs. Ag/AgCl. Conversely, bacterial biofilm formation impediment was noticed after an excitation of +0.800 V vs. Ag/AgCl [2.136]. The condition of “unperturbed growth” (corresponding to potentials below +0.140 to +0.200 V across a 10 nm thick biological membrane [2.136], see Section 2.6.4.2) can coincide with the potential of zero charge (PZC) of Au in NaCl media ranging from zero to +0.070 V vs. Ag/AgCl-KCl saturated [2.169].

2.6.7 EC model at the Au / seawater interface

As the interfacial behaviour of an electrochemical reaction is analogous to an electrical circuit consisting for example of a specific combination of resistors and capacitors, the electrochemical systems (spectra) under study can be described in terms of their EC model [2.141].

In contrast to physical models established for polymer / organic coatings, e.g. waterborne protective coatings for marine applications [2.28,2.142,2.170-2.174] or porous metallic oxide coatings (alumina - Al₂O₃) [2.175], no consensus has been commonly agreed for reported EC models for biofilmed metallic surfaces [2.55,2.125,2.126,2.129,2.138,2.139,2.156,2.176-2.182] since the interfacial properties of a biofilmed metal surface (e.g. a biofilmed Au electrode) are complex. In analogy with MIC, there may be no universal model for biofilm on a metal surface but rather specific, well-defined mechanisms inherent to biofilmed metallic surfaces [2.3,2.183-2.186].

To represent the interfacial current exchange in the presence of diffusion, for instance inherent to the occurrence of a thin microbial film on the Au surface, all the interfaces using the Au electrode in alkaline media can be modelled (for the current study in Section 5.13) using an EC with mixed kinetic and charge control [2.142,2.187]. In this instance, the Randles model (\(R_s\) in series with a parallel branch with a \(C_{dl}\) and \(R_{ct}\) in series with \(W\) in Figure 2.20), which is indicative of a typical interface in electrochemistry, can be utilised [2.99,2.142-2.147,2.153].
Figure 2.20. Schematic of the EC model for Au in a chloride medium.

The diffusion component ($W$) or Warburg impedance ($Z_W$) in series with the charge transfer resistance ($R_{ct}$) in Figure 2.20 can be classified as faradaic processes (charge is transferred across the interface) with $i_{\text{faradaic}}$. Conversely, the capacitance component ($C_{\text{EPS}}$ or $C_{\text{con}}$ or $C_{\text{dl}}$) corresponds to charging effects (transient currents can flow without charge transfer), thus indicative of non-faradaic processes with $i_{\text{non-faradaic}}$ [2.145,2.187]. Overall, the observed current ($i_{\text{obs}}$) across an electrochemical interface (Figure 2.20) is given by [2.42,2.142]:

$$i_{\text{obs}} + i_{\text{anodic}} = i_{\text{cathodic}}$$  \hspace{1cm} (2.23)

where at OCP, the zero current ($i_{\text{obs}} = 0$) corresponds to $|i_{\text{anodic}}| = |i_{\text{cathodic}}|$, thus showing the importance of the anodic branch (Figure 2.20) with the presence of an external reference capacitance ($C_{\text{ref}}$) having minimum effects (typical small magnitude values of circa $zF$) and whose values have been reported not to vary with biofilm growth on a Au surface [2.156,2.178].

In addition (see Figure 2.20):

$$i_{\text{cathodic}} = i_{\text{faradaic}} + i_{\text{non-faradaic}}$$  \hspace{1cm} (2.24)
For a microdisk electrode, the Newman formula can be used to evaluate $R_s$ (resistance of seawater or 3.5 % NaCl in Figure 2.20):

$$R_s = \frac{I}{4\sigma r}$$

(2.25)

where $\sigma$ is the electrical conductivity of the electrolyte and $r$ the radius of the microelectrode [2.177]. Whereas $C_{EPS}$ is the capacitance of the EPS matrix inherent to the biofilm (Figure 2.20), $C_{con}$ represents the capacitive component for the conditioning layer, and also $C_{dl}$ is the double layer capacitance at the Au surface. $C_{EPS}$, $C_{con}$ and $C_{dl}$ in reality do not behave ideally as capacitors (due to a non-homogeneity – linked to surface roughness [2.188], distribution of reaction rates [2.189], varying thickness or composition [2.190] and $I$ or non-uniform current distribution [2.191,2.192]) and consequently a constant phase element (CPE) [2.142,2.145] is used to model these components. The impedance of a CPE may be defined by:

$$Z_{CPE} = \frac{1}{Y_0(j\omega)^n}$$

(2.26)

where $Y_0$ has the numerical value of the admittance ($1/|Z|$) at $\omega = 1$ rad s$^{-1}$. The factor $n$ usually lies between 0.5 and 1. When $n = 1$, the CPE describes an ideal capacitance, where $Y_0$ is the capacitance value. For $0.5 < n < 1$, the CPE represents a distribution of dielectric relaxation times in frequency space. When $n = 0.5$, the CPE stands for a Warburg impedance with diffusion character [2.142,2.145]. Although the impedance relations of a capacitor and CPE are similar, $Y_0$ does not have units of capacitance and relatively small deviations of $n$ from 1 can lead to significant computational errors. Brug et al. have developed an expression of the effective capacitance ($C_{eff}$) of a CPE measured by EIS, which can be used for a normal distribution (e.g. with the occurrence of a thin biofilmed surface) assuming a minimum variation of the local resistivity [2.193,2.194]. This expression is preferred over the Hsu and Mansfeld’s Equation with the presence of a characteristic frequency component at which the maximum in the imaginary part of the impedance occurs [2.193].
In this instance, Equation 2.27 can be utilised to transform the CPE values into an effective capacitance [2.193,2.194] and $R_f$ represents the film resistance:

$$C_{\text{eff}} = \left( R_f \right)^{1-n} Y_0^{1/n} \quad (2.27)$$

This will be used for the quantitative analysis of the EIS measurements in Section 5.13.2. The effective capacitance represents an average value of the interfacial capacitance (with the limitations associated with the concept of normal distribution), thus does not provide quantifiable information on the deconvoluted $C_{\text{EPS}}$, $C_{\text{con}}$ and $C_{\text{dl}}$ values in Section 5.13.2. Likewise, $R_{\text{ct}}$ in Figure 2.20 is the charge transfer resistance, which indirectly relates to the baseline ORR in alkaline media and / or the enzymatic enhanced cathodic reduction involving electron transfer at the Au / biofilm interface, or redox-active centre within the EPS matrix / seawater interface [2.142,2.143].

$$R_{\text{ct}} = \frac{RT}{zFj_{\text{OCP}}} \quad (2.28)$$

where $R$ is the molar gas constant, $T$ the temperature, $z$ the number of electrons, $F$ the Faraday constant and $j_{\text{OCP}}$ the current density at OCP. Interestingly, $R_f$ in Equation 2.27 can correspond to $R_{\text{ct}}$ (Equation 2.28) for a thin biofilm, see Section 5.13.2.

Similarly, the diffusion component ($W$) is representative of a competing process to the interfacial charge transfer, where electro-active species from the bulk solution (e.g. DO) can diffuse across the Au interface [2.142-2.147].

In order to assess the quality of the EC fit vs. the EIS raw data, a number of standard procedures have been developed using software for EIS data analysis. These procedures rely on the following [2.195]:

- the $\chi^2$ error has to be suitably low ($\chi^2 \leq 10^{-4}$),
- and the errors associated with each element have to range between 0 and 5 %.
2.7 Biofilm microscopy techniques

This section reviews potential corroborative microscopy techniques, which can be used to characterise the bacterial biofilm formed on a metallic surface. In this instance, Surman et al. [2.89] and more recently Denkhaus et al. [2.20] have published an extensive comparative study of microscope techniques for biofilm visualisation. Interestingly, flow cell systems (Section 3.2.4.2) have been reported to be convenient for examination of sessile microorganisms since they can be adapted for microscopic assessment under a wide range of operating conditions [2.80]. Similarly, a number of surface and interfacial spectroscopic characterising techniques (Table 2.3) such as infrared (IR) and attenuated total reflection infrared (ATR-IR), Fourier transform infrared (FTIR), nuclear magnetic resonance (NMR), photoacoustic, reflectance and X-ray analysis have the capability to be utilised in bacterial biofilm studies. A detailed description of these techniques for bacterial biofilm analysis is beyond the scope of this report and can be found in detail elsewhere [2.20, 2.80, 2.118]. Overall, these techniques can provide important information on the biochemical environment inherent to biofilm and are possibly too advanced for the immediate requirement to visually assess the bacterial attachment on Au surfaces. However, this does not exclude their potential use (e.g. spectroscopy techniques) for bacterial biofilm characterisation in the future.

2.7.1 Potential competitive microscopy techniques

SEM has been used for biofilm visualisation and characterisation of sessile bacteria in biofouling / biocorrosion studies for many years [2.2, 2.94, 2.196]. The main reasons were good image contrast, high depth of field and high magnification associated with the SEM technique. Conversely, a major SEM drawback is the sample preparation prior to biofilm examination using ultra-high vacuum: fixation, desalination when required, dehydration and critical point or freeze-drying [2.2]. This inevitably leads to induced artefacts and changes in structure (distorted and / or flattened biofilm), which make precise bacterial biofilm characterisation difficult [2.94, 2.141, 2.197, 2.198]. Even the use of low vacuum (0.1 – 50 Torr) environmental scanning electron microscope (ESEM) can create problems due to the necessity to remove excess water on the surface, which may obscure underlying biological features and result in the collapse of the biofilm structure [2.2, 2.94, 2.199]. Alternatively, techniques such as transmission electron microscopy (TEM) for very high resolution imaging can be used for biofilm attachment on Au surface [2.199, 2.200]. With TEM, high resolution
quantitative analysis of internal cross sections of individual bacteria and the corresponding overall biofilm can be assessed. Similar to SEM, TEM is costly requiring time-consuming sample preparation, where bacterial biofilms can be sensitive to harsh treatments on surfaces, e.g. mechanical sectioning of the biofilmed surface [2.201] and dehydration processes that can have a shrinking effect on the biofilm [2.89].

Alternative techniques, such as AFM capable of providing detailed structural information on a nanoscale [2.2,2.202], have been utilised to study naturally occurring biofilms on SS surfaces, i.e. selective metal-ion binding properties of EPS in the biocorrosion process [2.2,2.203]. Other applications for AFM involve adhesion load measurements of biofilms and force-distance plots [2.203]. Likewise, surface conditioning steps and bacteria adhesion were characterised on Au surfaces using AFM [2.196]. The results were in good agreement with fundamental studies on biofilm utilising AFM, which revealed the importance of chemical and topographic surface properties during the early stages of biofilm growth and extent, for instance on biofilmed Au surfaces [2.204]. However, AFM is potentially a destructive technique employing a cantilever tip with limited performances in aqueous solution [2.196,2.202], thus limiting its use to characterise biofilms in their native environment. In this instance, bacterial biofilm observations using the AFM tapping or acoustic resonant mode (to maintain an intermittent contact between the tip and the surface) may be a great alternative to minimise mechanical deformation on the biofilmed surface [2.196].

More recently, Flores et al. published a review on the future of the invaluable, high resolution AFM to address promising combination (of AFM) into hybrid devices, therefore suggesting greater routes for more complete description of biofilm processes and structures [2.205].

Nevertheless, the competing scanning ion conductance microscopy (SICM) has been developed to provide images of intact living cells with high resolution performance comparable to SEM and AFM [2.206-2.211]. In addition, SICM can provide 3D images, information on the dynamics and the structure of cell membranes [2.207,2.211], and also quantitative cell volume measurements [2.210]. Recently, scanning electrochemical microscopy (SECM), which relies on measurement of faradaic current changes during the displacement of a microelectrode [2.212,2.213], has been used to determine the spatial distribution of metals in microbial biofilms. SECM can enable non-invasive imaging of electro-active surface components at a microscale [2.214]. Similarly, Liu et al. uniquely reported the monitoring of redox activity of individual living cells using SECM [2.215], thus allowing further studies on the redox processes
inherent to cells [2.216-2.219]. However, SECM investigations of biofilm remain scarce [2.220].

Similarly, transmission light microscopy techniques could provide useful biofilm structure information such as biofilm thickness, i.e. biofilm thickness measurements of around \( \approx 30 - 40 \ \mu m \) using a light microscope [2.221]. However, its use is limited to transparent surfaces such as glass and Perspex [2.198,2.221], thus is not applicable for metallic surfaces. In addition, the diffraction limit of light is a major drawback for transmission light microscopes [2.141].

More recently, episcopic differential interference contrast (EDIC) microscopy linked with epifluorescence (EF) microscopy, which is both more rapid and cheaper than most of the advanced competing microscopy candidates [2.89,2.198], has been developed by Prof Keevil, now working in the SBS at the UoS [2.94]. The EDIC version used by Keevil et al. consists of a reconfigured Nikon Labophot-2 microscope that combines a normal epifluorescence attachment with EDIC illumination above the specimen stage, thus allowing biofilm examination on opaque surfaces (in contrast with the conventional DIC microscope using transmitted light) [2.94,2.170,2.198,2.222]. Likewise, the path of light beam is influenced by the characteristics of the sample (shape, thickness and composition variability) [2.198]. The emerging EDIC microscopy can be used for film topography, growth features and biofilm viability, settling cue densities and composition on opaque surfaces such as metals [2.94,2.170]. In this instance, it has been successfully employed to visualise biofilm communities on metallic surfaces, i.e. Cu substrata [2.41,2.94,2.198]. In addition, the EDIC microscope has enabled a quantitative analysis of biofilm viability and formation on natural product based antifouling system [2.170].

Similar to the DIC technique, the Hoffman modulation contrast microscope can image biofilms with a high contrast resolution using opposite phase gradients to opposite intensities in the image, as a consequence the resulting image appears 3D with bright and dark features against a grey background [2.89]. Although the magnification and the quantitative analysis are limited, this cheap microscopy technique has been proven suitable to assess dense areas of the biofilm [2.89].

The advent of CLSM / SCLM rendered with 3D images has led to a new concept of bacterial biofilms (Section 2.6.3), i.e. the occurrence of complex 3D heterogeneous biofilms (aerobic films in waste water plants) containing interstitial voids and channels between these voids, thus facilitating convective mass transport and favouring higher
concentration of constituents (used for cellular metabolites) in void areas [2.2.2.77]. Importantly, this conceptual model of biofilm would have never emerged without the combined use of microelectrode measurements (Section 2.6.4), which has helped to address that the effective diffusion coefficient in aerobic biofilms was influenced by the flow regime and the biofilm structure, and also that mass transport by convection was predominant through the pores of the biofilm [2.2.2.80]. In practice, the CLSM technique can be used to obtain high resolution optical images at different depth, i.e. optical cross sectional images in the x-y plane captured along the z-direction for spatial imaging, with subsequent 3D reconstructions [2.9.2.80.2.197.2.223]. The high resolution of confocal microscopy in Figure 2.21(a) is achieved by reducing out of focus light using an aperture (detection pinhole), which is positioned (in the light path) in an optically conjugated plane to the point light source [2.94.2.141.2.223]. Consequently, the light in dotted gray line is obstructed by the detection pinhole, see Figure 2.21(a).

![Diagram](image.png)

**Figure 2.21.** Comparison of (a) CLSM and (b) multi-photon fluorescence optics, adapted from [2.94.2.223].

As light reaching the detector is limited in the CLSM technique, high power lasers utilising argon (Ar) at \( \lambda = 488 \) and 568 nm or more expensive argon-krypton (Ar-Kr) at \( \lambda = 488, 568 \) and 647 nm sources can be used to excite a fluorophore in biological systems [2.94]. This in turn can cause irradiation below the planes where the
specimen is scanned, thus potentially generating photo-bleaching, -damages, cytotoxicity (toxicity towards the cells), and also photo-toxicity (leading to the selective death of the cells expressing the corresponding fluorophore) effects [2.94]. This has led to the development of the multi-photon microscope in Figure 2.21(b), where out of focus light is limited (absence of detection pinhole) using a stream of strongly focused subpicosecond pulses of laser light in the red or near IR excitations (690 – 1,000 nm), therefore minimising all the photo-induced detrimental effects reported for the CLSM, e.g. photo-damages [2.94,2.224-2.227]. In this instance, the multi-photon in Figure 2.21(b) providing a better signal to noise ratio (whereas the filter range that can be used is limited) compared to the standard confocal system is suitable for the examination of thick films (from 50 – 100 µm towards 400 – 500 µm), living cells and UV sensitive surfaces [2.94,2.224-2.227].

Alternatively, advanced fluorescent methods (listed as follows) have been developed for measurements of exchange rates, molecular diffusion and / or structure:

- fluorescent recovery after photo-bleaching (FRAP) used to measure diffusion of fluorophores into a photo-bleached area,
- Förster resonance energy transfer (FRET) utilised to assess the radiation-less energy transfer between two fluorophores,
- fluorescence lifetime imaging microscopy (FLIM), where changes in fluorescence intensity of markers can be detected as well as energy states of fluorophores when combined with FRET, and
- fluorescence correlation spectroscopy (FCS) to enhance the resolution of CLSM images and for instance study molecular dynamics in living cells [2.141].

Moreover, correlative light electron microscopy (CLEM) and stimulated emission depletion (STED) microscopy can be used for imaging at the nanoscale [2.141]. In the CLEM technique, this is achieved utilising correlation between electron microscopic and CLSM images, but it requires time-consuming computation. In contrast with transmission light microscopy, the STED technique is an advanced fluorescent method, where a sample region under investigation is photo-bleached, therefore allowing microscopic assessment below the diffraction limit [2.141]. In addition, optical coherence tomography (OCT) has been used for biofilm characterisation, where non-invasive measurements of backscattered light from the biofilmed surface are performed, thus leading to evaluation of biofilm density and structure at the micrometer scale [2.141]. However, the applicability of CLEM, STED microscopy and OCT for
biofilm examination needs to be further addressed [2.141]. Besides investigations on the structure and architecture of biofilms, the use of magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) has been reported for the two-dimensional description of flow phenomenon at the biofilm / bulk solution interface [2.228]. In MRI, biofilm images are selectively computed with relaxation time weighted NMR technique, i.e. exploiting the difference in NMR relaxation time values of H$_2$O molecules arising from changes in mobility between the inner and outer biofilm layers [2.228,2.229]. Nevertheless, the MRI system is expensive and unhandy, where its use outside laboratories is not appropriate [2.118].

Recently, scanning transmission X-ray microscopy (STXM) using a near-edge X-ray absorption fine structure (NEXAFS) spectroscopy has been applied to study fully hydrated biological materials, thus being a competing technique to the ESEM, EDIC and CLSM [2.20,2.141,2.230]. The STXM technique relies on:

- soft X-rays to penetrate water,
- the presence of suitable analytical core edges in the soft X-ray region,
- reduced radiation damage compared to that caused by electron beam techniques such as SEM [2.20,2.200].

STXM is capable of mapping biofilm metal (e.g. Au) surfaces [2.20,2.200,2.231]. In addition, there is no need for the addition of reflective, absorptive, or fluorescent probes and markers that may introduce artefacts or complicate the interpretation [2.200]. However, STXM limitations involve the following:

- requirement for very thin samples (< 200 nm equivalent thickness of dry organic components and < 5 µm of water for wet conditions),
- use of fragile silicon nitride windows,
- potential absorption saturation distortion of analysis in thick regions of a specimen,
- necessity for data acquisition without undue radiation damage, and
- suitability of the model compounds relative to biofilm material [2.200].
2.7.2 Preferred microscopy methodology

From Section 2.7.1, STXM, SEM and TEM are limited compared to CLSM and EDIC with regard to surface preparation (harsh treatments required for SEM and TEM, whereas encapsulation of biofilm in a wet cell can significantly reduce the applicability of the STXM technique for the current project). Likewise, other microscopy studies for biofilm examination have reported that TEM can introduce a significant higher number of artefacts than confocal microscopic systems [2.89]. Whereas the presence of the cantilever tip for the AFM can potentially cause damages to the biofilm [2.2.202.2.203], the reported more convenient SICM has shown promise in imaging living cells [2.207.2.211]. However, the use of a micropipette tip relative to the sample surface (for instance in the SICM technique) requires accurate and precise positions of the sensing probe [2.2.82], thus is a source of inconvenience to map an engineering surface. Similarly, the SECM technology needs to be fully addressed for bacterial biofilm studies [2.220]. Overall, the scanning probe methods such AFM, SICM and SECM suitable for imaging localised surface processes may find alternative routes of application in the field of MIC [2.82,2.220]. In contrast, both CLSM and EDIC, which do not involve a tip / surface interaction, can allow greater penetration and are non-invasive, and also non-destructive 3D imaging of biofilm [2.94,2.200]. For instance, the z-scan detection of the EDIC/EF with good depth of field is ideal for examination of biofilms of less than 10 µm in thickness [2.94], where the more affordable Hoffman modulation contrast microscope may only be limited to qualitative analyses of dense areas of the biofilm [2.89]. Similarly, EDIC/EF enables the detection of high extinction factor values (point at which a bacterial species experiences an abrupt change in density or number because of an important parameter such as habitat loss), can increase image contrast and brightness and define clear spatial relationships, thus resulting in good quality images [2.94]. Furthermore, the CLSM and EDIC techniques are appropriate for viewing biofilms on opaque materials, e.g. Au surfaces [2.94].

Ideally, a corroborative microscopic assessment for biofilm studies should be able to provide detailed information of biofilm spatial distribution and composition as demonstrated by Lawrence et al. using STXM, CLSM and TEM [2.200], Gamby et al. utilising SEM, AFM and spectroscopy methods [2.196], and also Yuan et al. with fluorescent microscopy, SEM and XPS investigations [2.182]. However, this valuable approach appears to be unrealistic for the current project, thus emphasising the necessity to select one suitable microscopy technique as opposed to a combination of potential microscopy candidates. As CLSM has proven to be capable of revolutionising
the field of biofilm using microelectrodes [2.2.77] and can provide quantitative information of biological material (Section 2.8.1), it will be used for the proposed project to corroborate the electrochemical sensing strategy. Not only CLSM is a valuable quantitative microscopy technique, but it has also been described as the most versatile, applicable and suitable technology for biofilm investigation [2.27, 2.230]. In addition, the CLSM technique has allowed the development of action mechanisms of biocide [2.2], therefore relevant to address the effectiveness of a biofilm inhibition strategy (Section 2.9).

2.8 Quantification of bacterial biofilm

2.8.1 Microscope image processing

No single microscopy technique is completely satisfactory for quantitative evaluation of bacterial biofilms, i.e. each has a number of limitations and disadvantages that limit a full understanding of the microbial interactions on metallic surfaces [2.82]. For example, EDIC/EF provides only partial quantitative data (examinations and analyses of fluorophore-labelled cells with resulting images appearing 3D [2.94]), whereas optical cross-sections and 3D reconstruction of biofilm imaging can be obtained using CLSM, thus facilitating quantitative microscope image processing [2.89]. With the use of fluorophores (two nucleic acid stains, the green-fluorescent SYTO® 9 stain and the red-fluorescent propidium iodide stain) live / alive (live bacteria unable to reproduce in nutrient medium [2.232]) and dead bacterial cells can be clearly identified [2.41, 2.94, 2.170, 2.198, 2.232]. As a standalone, SYTO® 9 stain labels both live and dead bacteria [2.41, 2.232]. Conversely, the propidium iodide can only stain bacteria with damaged membranes, therefore reducing the SYTO® 9 green fluorescence when both stains are utilised [2.41, 2.232]. Overall, intact bacterial cells fluoresce green, whereas aging bacteria (with damaged membranes) appear red [2.170, 2.232]. Figure 2.22 illustrates the typical fluorescence emission spectra (excitation at 470 nm) of live and dead bacterial cells using a molecular probe technique Live / Dead® BacLight™ (from Invitrogen), which contains the SYTO® 9 and propidium iodide stains [2.232].
Using the Live / Dead® BacLight™ bacterial viability kit (Figure 2.22), live bacteria fluoresce green (G) and dead bacteria are red (R) fluorescent. After exposure to isopropanol (effective reagent in killing bacteria), a fluorescence spectral shift is observed from G to R in Figure 2.22 as the percentage of live bacteria is significantly reduced [2.232]. However, it may be difficult under certain circumstances, for instance in analogy with the acridine orange stain, to differentiate dead cells (with degraded single stranded DNA) from rapidly growing cells (with a high RNA content) because they can both fluoresce in the red part of the spectrum (around $\lambda \approx 620$ nm) [2.94]. Importantly, the BacLight™ fluorescence-based assay has been successfully used on a variety of bacteria (e.g. Escherichia coli and Pseudoalteromonas species) [2.67,2.232-2.234] and biofilms [2.41,2.67,2.170,2.232-2.234].

Similarly, a qualitative assessment of the extent of biofouling and bacterial viability on metallic surfaces can be achieved using percentage coverage methods [2.41,2.79,2.170,2.233,2.234]. This can be performed utilising suitable image analysis thresholding of green / red (8-bit colour) and subsequent measurement of the corresponding fouled areas on binary (black and white) pictures with ImageJ (Java-based image processing and analysis software inspired by NIH-Image developed at the National Institutes of Health [2.66,2.77,2.234,2.235]), where black features are
indicative of biofilm (cells clusters) with surrounding white channels and / or bare surfaces [2.66,2.77], see Section 5.12. Alternatively, AxioVision software from Imaging Associates, Thame, UK can be used for percentage coverage analyses [2.236].

Specifically, recent research carried out using CLSM and 3D visualisation methods have resulted in quantitative evaluation of the microbial biofilm structures cultivated in a controlled medium [2.237], where previously it was limited to qualitative analyses, two dimensions observation or required operator-defined calibration [2.238]. Detailed maps of biofilm structures and composition have also been created with the combination of multi-microscopy analysis including STXM, CLSM and TEM [2.200]. This has led research to focus on powerful 3D image processing software utilising cross-sectional images obtained from microscopy techniques such as CLSM [2.237-2.239], with reported studies to describe in three-dimensions the biofilm heterogeneity, size and morphology of the biomass using CLSM images [2.237]. In this instance, the aim of these studies was to further develop existing software including:

- COMSTAT, *i.e.* program developed by the Department of Microbiology, Technical University of Denmark, written as a MATLAB script for quantification of 3D biofilm structures by analysing stacks of images acquired with a CLSM [2.240].
- Image Structure Analyser (ISA), *i.e.* program developed by the Biofilm Structure and Function Research Group, Montana State University, which can calculate textural entropy, homogeneity, energy, contrast, correlation, area porosity (measures the ratio of the void area to the total image), run lengths, diffusion distances and fractal dimension from digital biofilm images [2.241,2.242].

Whereas COMSTAT and ISA are used for quantitative analysis of single-channel CLSM data at a time, the PHobia Laser scanning microscopy Imaging Processor (PHLIP) is now a new image quantification package for multi-channel CLSM data, thus favouring processing of large quantities of data [2.243]. For example, the PHLIP program was used to describe the dynamic spatial and temporal separation of bacteria, diatoms, organic and inorganic matter during the changes incurred from bacteria- to diatom-dominated biofilms [2.243].
Overall, these studies have allowed a more comprehensive description of these biofilm-related parameters in three dimensions \([2.237-2.239]\). However, the two main factors limiting the full automation of quantitative analysis of CLSM biofilmed images are: (i) the large computational requirements inherent to 3D data processing and (ii) the lack of suitable mathematical solutions and the corresponding computational package \([2.238,2.239]\).

### 2.8.2 Quantification using electrochemical techniques

#### 2.8.2.1 Biofilm thickness assessment using the charge transfer resistance

The \(R_{ct}\) parameter has been proposed in the literature to quantify \(\delta_b\) on a noble metal surface, where there is a debate over the validity of the derived parameters \([2.133]\). In most cases, a ferricyanide / ferrocyanide redox couple is used to maintain stable reaction kinetics at the interface during biofilm growth \([2.125,2.126,2.244]\), thus allowing assessment of film thicknesses \([2.133]\). However, both the non-faradaic (capacitance) and faradaic (resistance) components of the EIS response play an important dual role in this current study (Section 2.6.7), therefore it is not appropriate when using a naturally occurring and electro-active bacterial biofilm (Section 2.4.3.2).

#### 2.8.2.2 Evaluation of bacterial sessile population using the interfacial capacitance

Similar to Section 2.8.2.1, previous studies have shown that the interfacial capacitance can be informative of bacterial attachment (early and mature stages of biofilm formation and extent) on sensor surface \([2.67,2.123,2.139,2.156,2.178]\), and in particular the changes in capacitance can be related to a magnitude coverage of sessile bacteria \([2.123]\).

In analogy with electrochemical investigations of protein adsorption on metallic surfaces \([2.245-2.250]\), the amount of adsorbed biological material and / or organic material \(\Gamma_{ADS}\) and the corresponding surface charge density \(Q_{ADS}\) can be associated in Equation 2.29 \([2.249]\):

\[
\Gamma_{ADS} = \frac{Q_{ADS}}{zF}
\]  
(2.29)
Likewise, the relationship between the corresponding effective capacitance $C_{\text{eff}}$ (either $C_{\text{con}}$ or $C_{\text{EPS}}$ for an adsorbed conditioning layer or adhered biofilm, respectively) and $\Gamma_{\text{ADS}}$ is defined in Equation 2.30 [2.249]:

$$C_{\text{eff}} = \frac{F^2 \Gamma_{\text{ADS}}}{4RT}$$

(2.30)

As a result, the combination of Equations 2.29 and 2.30 leads to Equation 2.31, thus showing the relationship between the calculated $Q_{\text{ADS}}$ value and the experimental $C_{\text{eff}}$ parameter:

$$Q_{\text{ADS}} = \frac{4zRT}{F}C_{\text{eff}}$$

(2.31)

Using the reported total surface charge ($\approx 10^{-12}$ C per bacterium) involved in current exchange during adhesion [2.55], Equation 2.31 can be exploited to address a relationship of the surface charge density of sessile cells to their adhered population (after subtraction of the abiotic response) using Equation 2.32, see Section 5.13.3.

$$\text{Number of cells} \approx \frac{Q_{\text{ADS}}(\text{biotic}) - Q_{\text{ADS}}(\text{abiotic})}{10^{-12}}$$

(2.32)

where $Q_{\text{ADS}}(\text{abiotic})$ and $Q_{\text{ADS}}(\text{biotic})$ are the surface charge density for the abiotic and biotic media, respectively. However, the hypotheses herein can provide limited information of the overall interfacial adsorption process:

- There is no deconvolution between the biofilm and the conditioning film, i.e. between $C_{\text{EPS}}$ and $C_{\text{con}}$ for the calculation in Equations 2.29 to 2.32 and as mentioned in analogy with protein adsorption on metallic surfaces [2.245-2.250].
- The $z$ value is herein assumed to be 4 (for consistence with Figure 2.14), where the validity of Equations 2.29 to 2.31 has been addressed for $z = 1$ in the studies on protein adsorption [2.245-2.250].
- The total surface charge ($\approx 10^{-12}$ C per bacterium) is used as a general accepted value for a sessile bacterium [2.55], where the exact value for a
Pseudoalteromonas bacterium adhered on a Au surface may show substantial differences.

Although the significance of these assumptions needs to be further assessed, it will be used, together with the evaluation of bacterial sessile population utilising ex situ confocal microscopy studies, for comparison in Section 5.13.3. Likewise, it was shown that the charge transfer resistance was dependent of the surface charge density of adsorbed organic material, where a decrease of the $R_{ct}$ parameter can be explained by favoured charge transfer between strongly adsorbed organic material (increase amount of organic matter) and the electrode [2.245,2.249]. Overall, this represents a corroborative quantitative assessment of bacterial biofilm for this current study (see Section 5.13.3).

2.8.3 Summary of the review of biofilm quantification

Sections 2.8.1 and 2.8.2 have outlined the unique approach for the current study (see Chapter 5) combining an electrochemical parameter (surface charge density) and the analysis of CLSM images (surface coverage and estimated number of adhered bacteria) to gain insight into biofilm quantification for online monitoring systems. The relevance of this strategy was reinforced by Keevil, who has argued that biofilm sensors are limited by calibration using suitable microscopy techniques to truly assess and quantify industrial biofouling [2.94].

2.9 Review of biofilm inhibition

Among the industrial cleaning procedures available for marine piping systems, such as marine heat exchangers, chemical and non-chemical methods are frequently used [2.2,2.3,2.21,2.69].

For the chemical techniques, routine oxidizing agents using chlorine, result in environmental concerns (chronic toxicity problems) and biofilm resistance increase (the reported concentration of antibiotic required to completely disrupt a biofilm on a metal is about 500 – 5,000 times higher to that for killing the corresponding planktonic cells) [2.3,2.5,2.21,2.137,2.251-2.253]. Thanks to CLSM, more is now known on the action mechanisms of oxidizing biocides such as chlorine, chlorine dioxide and ozone, whereas the modes of action for organic and synthetic biocides (bactericide) are to date not well understood [2.3]. Many years of research using biocides on biofilm metallic surfaces demonstrated that formaldehyde, glutaraldehyde, ammonium
didecyldimethyl chloride, isothiazolinone mixtures, dissolved ozone and sodium hypochlorite were more effective in killing planktonic cells rather than sessile bacteria [2.2], thus demonstrating their limitation for the proposed project. In addition, Mexel® 432 is one of the most adopted antifouling solutions with a longstanding experience in industrial plants (e.g. used in the Gaz de France's 800 MWe DK6 plant in Dunkirk “Dunkerque”, northern France) and in marine ships (e.g. utilised onboard the French nuclear aircraft carrier Charles de Gaulles plus onboard three UK nuclear submarines) [2.254]. Injected on average with 5 ppm for a 30 min duration once per day, the Mexel® 432 is a mixture of aliphatic amine surfactants (emulsion), which adsorbs onto exposed metallic surfaces and forms a very thin protective layer [2.254,2.255]. This protective film can act as a corrosion inhibitor, scale dispersant and it can affect fresh- and saltwater mussels, and also barnacles. Overall, Mexel® 432 is a non-oxidant (minimum impact on the environment), tensioactive emulsion that is not sufficiently toxic to kill organisms but it retards population growth and settlement including bacteria colonies: SRB, thiosulfate reducing bacteria (TRB) and *Legionella* spp [2.254-2.257]. Because Mexel Industries S.A. holds a patent on the Mexel® 432 technology [2.254] (i.e. the exact composition of the Mexel® 432 emulsion is protected by commercial confidentiality [2.255]), it will not be addressed in this thesis. Alternatively, the electrolysis of seawater generating chlorine and hypochlorous acid has already been proposed as an electrochemical antifouling method (relevant to in-service applications) [2.258].

Most of the non-chemical methods commonly used are mechanical ones, *i.e.* using trash racks, rakes, screens, sponge (batch) balls and brush systems [2.5,2.21]. The main drawback of these cleaning procedures is the associated frequent long downtime for offline treatments, the risk of partial ball blockage inside tubing (sponge rubber ball) and the unacceptability of the flow reversal using oscillating brushes (when costs of the sponge ball system are prohibitive) [2.5,2.21]. Other techniques such as thermal backwash (by raising the cooling water temperature) [2.3], non-thermal energy (using ultraviolet, gamma and laser irradiations) [2.3,2.21,2.258,2.259] and hydraulic methods (using high velocity ≈ 1 – 2 m s⁻¹) [2.3] are less common since their viability for in-service conditions needs to be further addressed. Although Brizzolara *et al.* have shown promising results in microfouling inhibition, *i.e.* up to 95 % over a 4 week duration, using acoustic pulsed devices operating at 17 kV with a frequency range of 0.01 – 1 MHz (thus protecting a 6 m long section of 16 mm diameter Ti heat exchanger tubes from microfouling), industrial applications of studies using applied physical stimuli (*e.g.* acoustic pulses generated by an electrical discharge) are still in their infancy [2.5,2.260].
In analogy, antimicrobial strategy against pathogenic biofilms is a major concern for health care applications, where the combined use of antibiotics and weak electrical currents \([2.135,2.137,2.252]\) or equivalent radio frequency currents \([2.261]\) or low-intensity ultrasound \([2.251]\) has shown promise in enhancing the overall efficacy of routine antibiotics. A probable explanation arising for the greater performances of the antibiotics results in their ability to traverse outer and inner bacterial membranes, which are significantly reduced or suppressed using suitable stimuli \((e.g. \text{ circa } 10 \text{ mA cm}^{-2} \text{ current density for } 12 \text{ h} \ [2.252] \text{ or rms current of } 150 \text{ mA at } 10 \text{ MHz, with a power output of } 5 \text{ W for } 24 \text{ h} \ [2.261] \text{ or } 500 \text{ kHz ultrasound at } 10 \text{ mW cm}^{-2} \text{ for } 2 \text{ h} \ [2.251]).\) However, these valuable effects against biofilms do not apply to all antibiotics and the overall applicability to industrial piping systems is not obvious. In addition, research on biofilm removal and disinfection has focused on the alternative use of enzyme \((e.g. \text{ proteases used in pipelines})\) \([2.262-2.265]\). Nevertheless, not only the overall cost incurred for potential in-service conditions remains prohibitive \([2.262]\), but also enzymes are highly sensitive to pH and temperature changes \((i.e. \text{ denaturation of proteins})\) \([2.263,2.265]\).

As the USA, \(e.g. \text{ US Environmental Protection Agency (US EPA) 1992 \ [2.3]}\) and European countries, \(e.g. \text{ Biocidal Product Directive 98/8/CR \ [2.132,2.263]}\), have introduce directives to reduce the discharge of organochlorines into the aquatic environment, attractive environmentally benign biocides that are efficient and effective against biofouling represent a good alternative. Whereas preliminary works using biological signals have focused on preventing biofilm growth and evolution \((i.e. \text{ interference with the natural cell signalling mechanisms inherent to biofilm formation and development})\) \([2.55,2.253]\), one suitable disruption approach would be the use of nitric oxide (NO) biofilm dispersal as a natural antifouling strategy to comply with marine environmental concerns and legislature. The formation of a biofilm is a dynamic process that integrates metabolic activities and exhibits developmental stages often resembling those of higher multicellular organisms \([2.1]\). Compounds that regulate key multicellular behavioural traits, for instance, those that coordinate biofilm detachment dispersal have emerged as novel and exciting targets for manipulation and control technologies \([2.26,2.67,2.265]\). In particular, bacteria in biofilms often undergo coordinated dispersal events and revert to a free-swimming planktonic phenotype \([2.235]\).
Recent research at Southampton has discovered that biofilms undergo programmed detachment during the course of normal development and that this detachment is linked to the accumulation of reactive nitrogen species (RNS) within biofilms [2.131,2.132]. NO was identified as an important factor in the regulation of biofilm dispersal [2.267,2.268]. Exposure to low, non-toxic concentrations of NO (in the nanomolar range, 500 nM) was found to induce dispersal in *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* biofilms and increase the sensitivity of cells to various antimicrobial treatments. Importantly, the concentration of NO that induces dispersal is substantially below that which would be toxic to biofilms [2.131,2.132]. NO signalling therefore exhibits considerable potential as a low-dose, economically attractive and environmentally benign technology for the control of biofouling. At concentrations that triggered dispersal in *P. aeruginosa* biofilms, NO was also found to enhance cell motility, a phenomenon correlated with active dispersal. Subsequently, it has been demonstrated that NO is able to induce dispersal in a broad range of other biofilm-forming microorganisms and, importantly for these studies, also in complex communities of microorganisms on surfaces [2.131,2.132,2.269]. Recently, it was shown that combined treatments with NO (e.g. chlorine with NO) were more efficient in removing multi-species aquatic biofilms, up to 20-fold increase in biofilm removal compared to the conventional chlorine treatment, therefore suggesting novel inhibition strategies [2.267]. One way of generating NO is to use the NO donor sodium nitroprusside (SNP) [2.232]. In this instance, SNP is composed of sodium (Na⁺) ion linked with nitroprusside anion via ionic interaction [2.268-2.271]. In aqueous solution, the nitroprusside, which has an octahedral ferrous centre with five tightly bound cyanide ligands plus one linear NO ligand, readily decomposes to NO [2.268-2.271], see Figure 2.23.
A preliminary study at Southampton (Figure 2.24), a collaboration between Dr Wharton from the nCATS and Dr Webb from the SBS at the UoS, involving the NO donor SNP, and a silane and glutaraldehyde immobilisation treatment on 3.5 cm diameter Ti specimens, has shown encouraging results after a 1 week immersion in natural seawater at the NOC pontoon. The dark areas in Figure 2.24(b) have been identified using Synchrotron Radiation – Fourier transform infrared (SR-FTIR) spectroscopy as having a biological signature similar to EPS in the fingerprint region, i.e. containing amides \((1500 – 1750 \text{ cm}^{-1})\), phosphates \((1200 – 1400 \text{ cm}^{-1})\) and carbohydrates \((850 – 1100 \text{ cm}^{-1})\), which are characteristic of biofilm formation, see Figure 2.24(c) [2.1-2.3,2.82,2.134,2.272,2.273]. Significantly, the overall extent of the EPS coverage on the SNP treated surface can be seen to be considerably reduced in Figure 2.24(d), thus indicating an effective biofilm inhibition performance.
Figure 2.24. (a) The as-ground Ti surface. Seawater immersed: (b) silanised and glutaraldehyde treatment, (c) SR-FTIR spectra of bacterial EPS of the surface (b), (d) silanised / glutaraldehyde treatment plus SNP immobilisation – courtesy of Dr Wharton and Dr Webb, University of Southampton.
The NO biofilm dispersal approach at Southampton has initiated a combination of basic and application-targeted research to investigate and exploit the interaction between NO and the detachment of fouling communities of microorganisms from surfaces. This corresponds to a completely novel area of application for the NO technology and therefore represents a unique opportunity for the control of marine biofouling. Although the study of the silanised / glutaraldehyde treatment plus SNP (NO donor) on Ti surfaces has shown insightful results into antifouling performance, this approach is not viable within marine piping systems directly exposed to seawater, and to a larger extent, no biofilm inhibition strategies using surface modification of Au surfaces [2.274] will be addressed for the current study. In contrast, NO donor SNP will be used as a biocide in seawater (for the proposed project) with the ultimate goal to generate the NO in situ. For that purpose, rapid screening of potential NO donors can include known NO donor molecules: SNP [2.234], diazeniumdiolate-based species and polymeric materials [2.266] where NO release can be controlled by selecting different molecular structures [2.275], or the in situ NO generation by catalytic decomposition of biofilm S-nitrosothiols (RSNO) via Cu corrosion [2.276]. Not only is the choice of a suitable biocide important, but also the duration (sufficient contact time [2.3]) and frequency of dosing (mostly on an intermittent or a continuous basis for industrial systems [2.3,2.5]), and also the flow regime can influence the overall fouling process [2.277], thereby emphasising the extremely difficult nature for effectively and / or efficiently combating biofouling in real systems [2.3].
Chapter 3 – Seawater environment
3.1 Physico-chemical properties of seawater

A diverse range of research fields including physical oceanography, marine chemistry, geology, biology and pollution are concerned with the physico-chemical properties of seawater [3.1]. This has resulted in the development of different simulating test solutions, which are generally used to model in-service conditions at the laboratory scale. However, it is possible to focus on typical marine engineered case scenarios with well-defined parameters, e.g. a marine heat exchanger operating under a turbulent hydrodynamic flow regime.

3.1.1 Seawater chemical composition

Seawater consists of water with various dissolved materials [3.1]. Most of the salt ions in the sea (≈ 99 %) are Cl\(^-\), Na\(^+\), SO\(_4\)^{2-}, magnesium (Mg\(^{2+}\)), calcium (Ca\(^{2+}\)) and potassium (K\(^+\)). A detailed composition of the major ions in seawater is described in [3.1-3.3]. These ions are a semi-conservative property of seawater, i.e. they display little variation with time. Nutrient elements are scarce chemicals in surface seawater (open ocean) and are typically measured in ppm, however, these are essential for the environmental growth conditions [3.3]. Major nutrients are carbon (C), nitrogen (N), phosphorus (P) and silicon (Si), and are non-conservative in seawater. The major dissolved gases in the sea are nitrogen (N\(_2\)), O\(_2\), CO\(_2\) and noble gases, such as Ar [3.3]. Usually, the ratio of the molar concentration of C, N and P (to form the soft tissues of organisms) in ocean water is 106:16:1 and the absolute values depend upon biological activity, transport processes, and chemical equilibria [3.3,3.4]. N\(_2\) and Ar are conservative whereas DO and CO\(_2\) are non-conservative. Organic material in seawater is composed of relatively low concentrations of large complex molecules produced by marine organisms or resulting from biological decay, e.g. proteins, lipids (fats), fatty acids, carbohydrates, hormones and vitamins.
3.1.2 Physico-chemical properties of surface seawater

The physico-chemical properties of surface seawater (zero to 500 m in depth) of relevance for the proposed experimental programme and detailed in [3.1.3.3.5-3.7] are:

- temperature range of –2 to 28 °C (Figure 3.1),
- pH is slightly alkaline and between pH 7.5 – 8.3,
- salinity (representative of the amount of salts in g dissolved in 1 kg of seawater after all carbonate converted to oxide, all bromine has been replaced by chlorine and all organic matter destroyed) varies between 32 and 36 % (parts per thousand or g kg⁻¹) in Figure 3.1,
- and the DO concentration is around 4 – 10 ppm.

Seawater density depends on temperature, salinity and atmospheric pressure. Usually, denser (more atoms or molecular mass in the same volume), colder and less salty water is overlain by less dense and high salinity warm water, where heat diffuses downwards more rapidly than the salt, thus resulting in instability in the system (convection patterns) [3.1.3.3]. However, the dependence is non-linear (Figure 3.1) for surface seawater equilibrated with the atmosphere.

![Figure 3.1. Average surface temperature, salinity, and density variation with latitude for all oceans, adapted from [3.1.3.2.3.6.]](image-url)
The latitude in Figure 3.1 corresponds to the location on the Earth, where 0° is representative of the Equator. For instance, North Atlantic coastal ocean, which occurs above the European continental shelf, ranges from 40 to 60° North latitude [3.1]. Seawater salinity can be estimated by measuring its conductivity since the relationship salinity-conductivity used by salinometers is based on a polynomial law [3.3,3.8]. However, conductivity-temperature-depth (CTD) instruments are often used to provide more detailed descriptions of the seawater environment under investigation [3.1,3.3]. For instance, the conductivity of seawater of 35 ‰ salinity at 25 °C is reported to be 53.03 mS cm⁻¹ [3.7]. Conductivity in seawater is mostly affected by the presence of inorganic ions, e.g. Cl⁻ and Na⁺, as opposed to organic matter, e.g. carbohydrates and fatty acids [3.1,3.8]. The air-sea interaction is the primary source of the DO in seawater [3.1]. Because of this (gas-liquid) interaction, the surface seawater is usually close to saturation, i.e. it contains as much dissolved gas as it can hold in equilibrium at an existing temperature, salinity and pressure. The solubility of O₂ (its ability to be dissolved as DO in a solution) is dependent on the salinity, temperature and its partial pressure [3.1]. When either the temperature or salinity increases, the DO level in seawater decreases (see Table 3.1 for surface seawater equilibrated with the atmosphere [3.7]) and increases with increasing pressure [3.3,3.7]. Conversely, cold and lower salinity seawater can maintain relatively higher DO levels [3.3,3.7]. All the above considerations regarding seawater properties result in the necessity of measuring the temperature, pH, salinity and DO level of the media for the EIS testing.
Table 3.1. Concentration of O₂ at various temperatures and salinity levels, from [3.7,3.9].

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Temperature / °C</th>
<th>Salinity / ‰</th>
<th>0</th>
<th>10</th>
<th>20</th>
<th>30</th>
<th>35</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>DO / ppm</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>11.3</td>
<td>10.6</td>
<td>9.9</td>
<td>9.3</td>
<td>9.0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>10.8</td>
<td>10.1</td>
<td>9.5</td>
<td>8.9</td>
<td>8.6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>10.3</td>
<td>9.7</td>
<td>9.1</td>
<td>8.6</td>
<td>8.3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>9.9</td>
<td>9.3</td>
<td>8.7</td>
<td>8.2</td>
<td>8.0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>9.5</td>
<td>8.9</td>
<td>8.4</td>
<td>7.9</td>
<td>7.6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>9.1</td>
<td>8.5</td>
<td>8.0</td>
<td>7.6</td>
<td>7.4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>8.7</td>
<td>8.2</td>
<td>7.8</td>
<td>7.3</td>
<td>7.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>8.4</td>
<td>7.9</td>
<td>7.5</td>
<td>7.1</td>
<td>6.9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>8.1</td>
<td>7.6</td>
<td>7.2</td>
<td>6.8</td>
<td>6.6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>7.8</td>
<td>7.4</td>
<td>7.0</td>
<td>6.6</td>
<td>6.4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.2 Biological background

3.2.1 Biofilm and biological processes

Any research programme using bacterial strains is not a straightforward task [3.10-3.15]. Due to the nature of this project, which is a surface engineering focused investigation applying marine microbiology, the microbiology component is liable to be the least controllable aspect and may lead to experimental problems if not carefully considered and planned (e.g. complexity of biological systems and reciprocal interactions between bacterial biofilms and the environment). For instance, just simply sampling from natural seawater requires attention with regard to seasonality, temperature, resilience (duration, natural and artificial light, nutrient levels) and aeration (significant potential for contamination from airborne pollutants and carbon sources) [3.10,3.16].
3.2.2 Biological considerations for biofilm monitoring

3.2.2.1 Environmental changes induced by bacterial metabolism

Bacterial metabolism may induce modifications in the growth environment / bulk solution, which can be detected by appropriate sensor technologies [3.12,3.10,3.17-3.27]. For instance, marine aerobic bacterial metabolism (where aerobic bacteria use DO present in seawater for respiration and are unable to live in its absence [3.12]) can affect the marine environment or the metal / seawater interface as follows:

- Bacterial metabolism for heterotrophs (derive energy from oxidation of organic matter [3.28]) involves the consumption of DO and organic material (e.g. glucose), resulting in the release of CO$_2$, H$_2$O, heat and organic acid production (lactic and acetic acid) [3.29,3.30], see Figure 2.11 in Section 2.4.3.2. CO$_2$ generated by the bacterial metabolism hydrates to form carbonic acid (H$_2$CO$_3$), a weak acid which contributes to the acidification of seawater [3.3,3.14,3.31], see Equation 3.1.

\[ \text{CO}_2 + \text{H}_2\text{O} \rightarrow \text{H}_2\text{CO}_3 \] (3.1)

- The differential aeration cell created by the bacterial biofilm on metallic surfaces can lead to localised corrosion [3.17]. This is consistent with the concept of a DO profile (a DO concentration gradient) across a mixed biofilm [3.12,3.14,3.17]. Similarly to Section 2.4.3.2, measurements of the pH profiles within the biofilms on SS UNS S31600 in a natural aqueous environment using a fibre-optic sensor have indicated pH values lower than 3 (at localised areas) to 8 (at the outer biofilm surface) [3.32].

As seawater can be considered as a naturally buffered solution (alkaline pH ≈ 8 due to the presence of sodium carbonate (Na$_2$CO$_3$), which acts as a pH regulator [3.1]), the influence of any localised changes in pH resulting from the bacterial metabolism may be negligible over a short-time duration of a few days. In addition, photosynthesis from phytoplankton (diatoms, dinoflagellates, coccolithophores [3.10]) contribute to CO$_2$ consumption (using energy from sunlight, phytoplankton assemble organic matter from CO$_2$ and nutrients dissolved in seawater) in marine environment [3.31].
3.2.2.2 Environmental stresses on biofilm growth and variability

Marine bacterial growth is influenced by physico-chemical parameters from the surrounding environmental conditions [3.16, 3.21]. Each bacterial species has its own optimal growth conditions and thus bacterial biofilms will be affected by environmental factors such as temperature, sunlight levels, nutrient supply, pH, DO level, flow regime and osmotic effects in unique ways [3.10, 3.16, 3.21, 3.28, 3.33, 3.34]. These parameters vary with the seasons, geographical location and with water depth (pressure levels) [3.16, 3.21].

Temperature

The temperature of the biotic environment can affect living organisms in two ways: (i) as the temperature rises, the reaction kinetics of enzymatic and chemical processes can be enhanced and (ii) above a certain threshold temperature the biofilm proteins can be irreversibly damaged [3.5, 3.10, 3.12]. Alternatively, O\textsubscript{2} solubility declines as temperature increases in seawater (Table 3.1) [3.7, 3.9], thus affecting respiration rates in aerobic organisms [3.1, 3.3, 3.5]. Similarly, the temperature of the environmental growth can influence the development of a diverse microbial community [3.21]. For example, an 80% increase in biofilm thickness was reported with a temperature rise from 30 to 35 °C [3.35]. It was also shown that larvae of Balanus amphitrite and Balanus trigonus can settle on biofilms established at high temperatures (23 and 30 °C), whereas at lower temperatures (16 °C) their settlement was unaffected (Balanus amphitrite) or inhibited (Balanus trigonus), respectively. In addition, higher rates of larval metamorphosis was observed at higher temperatures (23 and 30 °C) while biofilms were predominant at lower temperatures (16 °C) [3.21]. This is in good agreement with the studies reported by Shams El Din et al., where it was shown that the rate and extent of biofilm formation is dependent on the ambient seawater temperature, with more significant biofouling rates during the warmer periods [3.36].
**Sunlight levels**

UV radiation (particularly at $\lambda = 260$ nm) from the solar radiation spectrum can affect the genetic content of bacteria [3.33]. Certain types of enzymes are hence activated to repair possible damages caused by this UV radiation. The effects of sunlight on the decomposition of dissolved organic carbon, NO$_3^-$ and phosphate (PO$_4^{3-}$) and bacterial metabolism in aqueous conditions has been studied in the published literature [3.37]. It is reported that the synergic effect of photochemical (interactions between atoms, small molecules and light) and microbial alteration of dissolved organic matter discussed in [3.37], may include:

- increase bacterial demand for inorganic nutrients,
- change the bacterial growth efficiency (BGE),
- and influence the contribution of carbon between bacterial biomass and respiration.

Hung *et al.* studied the effect of UV-A (315 – 400 nm) and UV-B (280 – 315 nm) on the biofilm bioactivity that can indirectly affect larval attachment of barnacles [3.21]. Applied UV radiation resulted in a decrease in the percentage of respiring bacterial cells with enhanced effects using higher UV energies. At fixed energy level, UV-B showed greater ability in reducing bacterial cell density than UV-A [3.21]. Conversely, a decrease of larval settlement of *Hydroides elegans* with increased UV radiation was observed, potentially indicating that UV radiation can affect a biofilm’s inductive cues for *Hydroides elegans*. Overall, these considerations suggest that the influence of radiation on biofilm bioactivity may depend on the larval / spore’s response induced by biofilms [3.21]. However, the sunlight-exposure within marine pipes and heat exchangers is very limited and bacterial biofilms usually develop under dark conditions. Consequently, an enclosed Faraday cage (dark conditions, *i.e.* at light irradiance values close to $0.0$ µmol photons m$^{-2}$ s$^{-1}$) has been chosen for the EIS laboratory experiments.
**Season**

The North Atlantic Ocean has marked seasonal changes in seawater temperature, as a consequence this affects the biofilm growth enhanced during the spring and summer months [3.5,3.6]. The reproduction and growth of marine organisms are suppressed during the winter period (accounting for the reductions in seawater temperature, solar radiations and the numbers of spores and larvae [3.16]), resulting in an overall decrease in new attachment and biofouling [3.6,3.7].

![Biomass (arbitrary units) vs. Date](image)

**Figure 3.2.** Seasonal cycle in (phytoplankton) biomass for the North Atlantic [3.6,3.7].

Two maxima are frequently reported for marine organisms (phytoplankton) in the North Atlantic Ocean, a large peak occurring in the spring and a smaller one in the autumn, see **Figure 3.2**. The sharp onset of colonization in the spring suggests that a temperature threshold may exist, which can represent the time when attachment begins. The duration of the biofouling season is hence defined as the time over which the seawater temperature remains beyond this critical level [3.6,3.7]. However, it is more likely that the onset of bacterial growth for the spring season (**Figure 3.2**) is shifted compared to that for phytoplankton, i.e. it initiates when phytoplankton biomass is suppressed [3.38].
Figure 3.3. Monthly mean (±Standard Deviation) ratio of depth-integrated total bacterial biomass (BB) and depth-integrated phytoplankton biomass (PB). Dashed line indicates unity, from [3.38].

This is consistent with Figure 3.3, where phytoplankton biomass is about half of the bacterial biomass in August – the depth-integrated total biomass is representative of an average biomass value of measurements taken at 5, 15 and 25 m depth in the southern North Sea [3.38].

**Nutrient supply and geographical location**

Likewise, biofouling is influenced by the geographical location. For instance, a dominant fouling species in northern France and southern UK coastal areas is the barnacle *Semibalanus balanoides*, whereas the *Balanus amphitrite* species is prevalent in the Mediterranean Sea [3.16]. The chemical composition of the ambient seawater (Section 3.1.1) will also play an important role in the number, diversity and metabolic states of planktonic bacteria, and their ability to attach onto surfaces [3.21]. To date, the interactions between nutrients, biofilm properties and the colonisation process in nature still need to be addressed [3.21]. Recently, Hung et al. demonstrated that biofilms established at similar intertidal height in different ecological niches (experiencing contrasting environmental conditions) can activate diverse bioactivities for barnacle larval settlement. These findings suggest that the nutrient load at different habitats can be a key element triggering several biofilm bioactivities [3.21]. Because of the importance of temperature on bacterial growth and its complex seasonal and geographical effects, and also nutrient load, the EIS testing will be performed using
artificial seawater (ASW) of known chemical composition in a controlled room temperature (fixed location, absence of seasonal effects).

**pH**

Changes in the pH solution can degrade proteins, enzymes (required for the bacterial metabolism) and unbalance the stability of the cytoplasmic membrane of bacteria from the biofilms \[3.33, 3.39, 3.40\]. In addition, pH changes can affect adsorption onto surfaces, see Figure 2.19 in Section 2.6.5.3. This reinforces the need of using buffer alkaline media or seawater with its naturally buffering due to the presence of Na$_2$CO$_3$.

**DO level**

Similarly, marine aerobes or aerobic bacteria require DO otherwise they can potentially die or go dormant without its presence in the growth environment \[3.1, 3.10, 3.33\]. Therefore, continuous aerated media will be required.

**Flow regime**

As discussed in Sections 2.4.4.4 and 2.4.4.5, the flow regime can affect biofilms. For instance, the effective diffusion coefficient in aerobic biofilms was found to be dependent on flow conditions and biofilm structure \[3.12\]. This mass transport process occurs preferentially by convection through pores in the biofilm \[3.12\]. In addition, CSLM observations under flow regimes have revealed that cell clusters from the biofilm can vary in shape (ranging from cylinders to filaments) \[3.12, 3.21, 3.41\], see Section 2.4.4.4. It was also observed that turbulent conditions can favour rapid adhesion of planktonic bacteria, thus facilitating secretion of EPS matrix resistant to high fluid shear and subsequent settlement and growth processes \[3.21\]. As a result, the EIS testing will be done under controlled flow conditions.
**Osmotic effects**

Seawater salinity can also play a pivotal role in the biofilm processes [3.21]. Osmosis is the mechanism by which water diffuses from a region of low (dilute) to high (dense) solute concentration [3.33]. Usually, cellular cytoplasm has a higher solute concentration (higher water activity) than the growth environment. As a result, the tendency is for water to diffuse into the cell or more generally through the biofilms. Marine microorganisms usually have specific requirement for the Na⁺ ion and grow optimally at the water activity of seawater. These species are called halophiles (with affinity for salt). Consequently, the salinity of the test media will need to be constant and relevant to seawater environment.

**Water depth**

The development of the deep-water oil and gas industry has led to an increased focus on the study of deep biofilm / fouling species, thus supporting interest in the effect of pressure levels on these marine communities (a field area largely uninvestigated) [3.16]. Although deep waters can represent extremely unfavourable conditions for living organisms, it was reported that deep-sea organisms can adapt from adverse environments (lower light radiations, nutrient levels and water temperature, and also higher hydrostatic pressures) [3.16]. In this instance, certain types of marine bacteria, e.g. *Photobacterium* or *Shewanella* species can only grow under high pressure conditions (400 – 500 atm, representative of a 4000 – 5000 m depth) [3.42]. At such depths, the seawater temperature is on average about 2 °C [3.42]. Therefore, these conditions make methods for bacteria culturing difficult at the laboratory scale. In contrast, biofouling can occur in any marine engineered metallic systems at the atmosphere, e.g. offshore platform (truly ubiquitous problem detailed in Section 2.2). Thus, the EIS experiments will be performed under atmospheric pressure.
**Biological considerations**

Although beyond the scope of this current study, biological considerations such as availability and physiological condition of the colonising species, biological disturbance, competition and cooperation among species can play a pivotal role in biofilm community alterations [3.21]. In this instance, three main biological concepts may be of importance [3.15,3.43,3.44]:

- physiological adaptation: cells respond adaptively to local environmental conditions,
- genotypic variation and natural selection: mutation or chromosomal rearrangements,
- and stochastic gene switching: cells toggle between discrete physiological states by gene switching (random in nature).

### 3.2.3 Selection of marine bacterial species

Overall, marine planktonic bacterial cell populations range from $10^5$ to $10^7$, and $10^4$ to $10^6$ cells mL$^{-1}$ for estuarine and coastal ocean waters, respectively [3.1,3.28]. Estimates of the density of sessile bacteria are in the range of 1 cell / 0.3 $\mu$m$^2$ to 1 cell / 400 $\mu$m$^2$ [3.1]. Similarly, the size of planktonic bacteria cell in the ocean is small ($\leq 0.4$ $\mu$m in diameter), whereas, sessile bacteria generally have an average diameter of 0.6 $\mu$m [3.1]. As a complex and broad range of bacterial cells can be found in surface seawater, it is therefore necessary (for controllability reasons) to select a particular strain for the proposed study.
3.2.3.1 General considerations for bacterial strain selection

Specific bacterial species for this research work programme have been considered with regard to the published literature [3.45-3.48] and after discussions with Dr Hellio from the SBS at the University of Portsmouth and Dr Webb from the SBS at the UoS. Importantly, the bacterial strain selection criteria have to meet with engineering purposes such as biocorrosion and biofouling within marine heat exchangers, see Section 2.4. In biocorrosion, key research in Figure 3.4 has primarily focused on investigating interactions of anaerobic marine bacteria such as SRB on steel and Cu alloys. However, MIC has been recognised to be a much more complicated process, where it is rarely associated with just one species, see Section 2.1. For instance, the SRB mechanisms are not necessarily appropriate when considering aerobic bacteria. In addition, there is a general lack of understanding into the behaviour of aerobic marine bacterial biofouling and their interaction on metallic surfaces [3.49]. This has led to recent emerging studies to determine how aerobic bacteria influence the corrosion behaviour of Cu alloys to provide helpful insight in controlling biofouling and MIC in a marine environment [3.45].

![Figure 3.4. State-of-the-art in marine biocorrosion.](image-url)
Based on these considerations, Figure 3.4 shows the key components for this current project, which will focus on aerobic marine bacteria in an engineering context to develop understanding on the interactions of aerobic bacterial biofilms on metallic surfaces. This should help support future investigations for corrosion science using more realistic approaches with both anaerobic and aerobic species.

The most appropriate candidate strain (to study in this current study) has been identified as *Pseudoalteromonas* sp. NCIMB 2021 (Table 3.2) as it is probably the most prevalent bacterial species in seawater [3.10,3.16,3.21]. *Pseudoalteromonas* sp. has been found to be involved in the corrosion process of aluminium alloys (occasionally used in heat exchangers) in marine habitats [3.45]. This gram-negative rod is an aerobic slime-former and often grows in a patchy distribution over metal surfaces [3.12,3.50]. Similarly, Busalmen *et al.* have attributed the enhancement in the kinetics rate to the cathodic reduction by the catalase secreted by *Pseudoalteromonas* strain [3.51], see Section 2.4.3.2. Another species for possible consideration is *Vibrio* sp. strain S14, which can safely be cultured in a laboratory environment. Likewise, bacterial genera that may require further possible consideration include: *Achromobacter*, *Micrococcus* and *Flavobacterium* spp., which are widespread as fouling bacteria [3.10]. In contrast, the genera *Bacterium*, *Bacillus* and *Sarcina* are less common [3.10]. Bacterial species can be supplied freeze-dried in ampoules or as active cultures with a hazard sheet provided for each bacterial strain from the National Collection of Industrial, Marine and Food Bacteria (NCIMB) in the UK.
Table 3.2. Specification of bacterial strains.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bacterial strain</th>
<th>Pseudoalteromonas sp. NCIMB 2021</th>
<th>Vibrio sp. strain S14</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Main properties</strong></td>
<td>Commonly considered a pioneer in terms of attachment / bacterial biofilm formation [3.10,3.16,3.21]</td>
<td>Biofilm development, cellular detachment, adhesion [3.47,3.52,3.53]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Growth T / °C</strong></td>
<td>18 [3.54-3.56]</td>
<td>Ambient temperature [3.48]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Medium</strong></td>
<td>Similar to seawater conditions [3.45,3.54,3.55,3.57-3.59]</td>
<td>Väätänen nine-salt solution agar: Lauria-Bertani plates – 20 g L⁻¹ NaCl. Culture liquid using Marine minimal medium [3.48]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Advantages</strong></td>
<td>Species widespread in seawater [3.45,3.59]</td>
<td>Remains 100 % viable after 2 weeks in unsupplemented ASW – culturable after 6 months in the starvation regime [3.47]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Why use this bacterial strain?</strong></td>
<td>Few studies on bacterial biofilms directly formed on metallic surfaces / spatial repartition of biofilms [3.45,3.49]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Supply</strong></td>
<td>NCIMB [3.45,3.52,3.59-3.61]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Storage</strong></td>
<td>NOC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.2.3.2 Characteristics of Pseudoalteromonas sp. NCIMB 2021

A detailed description of the artificial growth environment of Pseudoalteromonas sp. NCIMB 2021, the parameters influencing its growth and colonisation on substratum, and SEM imaging to corroborate its fouling properties has been previously outlined in [3.50,3.54-3.56]. The 250 mL media used consisted of 0.1 % (w/v) peptone and 0.07 % (w/v) yeast extract powder in filtered seawater, pH 7.6 at 18 °C [3.55]. Peptone and yeast extract were used to enhance the organic carbon source content required by the bacteria (heterotrophic bacteria) for their metabolism [3.1]. It has been shown that the number of sessile bacteria is dependent on the cell density (planktonic cell population) and the growth stage (logarithmic, stationary and scenscent phases, see Figure 3.5) [3.55]. Figure 3.5 corresponds to a batch culture in the absence of continuous flow of nutrients, representative of environmental conditions associated with the natural self-purification process of rivers and lakes [3.12]. In this instance, the bacterial growth starts after the addition of an inoculum (certain amount of microorganisms) to a culture medium of specific chemical composition. The lag period preceding the logarithmic phase (Figure 3.5) coincides with the time required for bacterial cells to adapt to the...
new medium before the exponential growth begins [3.15]. Usually, the duration of the lag phase is influenced by the ability of cells to grow in a specific culture medium that may be different to that of the inoculums, e.g. a short lag period is correlated with fast growing cells when both the culture medium and inoculum are similar [3.12,3.15].

![Diagram of bacterial growth curve](image)

**Figure 3.5.** Typical growth curve of a bacterial culture, adapted from [3.12,3.15].

During the logarithmic phase (Figure 3.5), the species grow at a constant rate due to the constant division of each cell into two daughter cells [3.12]. Using this scheme, the average generation time ($t_d$) corresponding to the time interval for the bacterial population to duplicate can be computed, see Section 5.1. Values of $t_d$ are largely affected by the nutrients concentration and the environmental conditions in the culturing system, for instance for heterotrophic bacteria $t_d$ can range from 0.28 h (*Escherichia coli*) to 34 h (*Treponema pallidum*) [3.12]. Once the nutrients in the medium are depleted, the bacterial growth stops and the stationary phase starts (Figure 3.5). During this (stationary) phase, which can last a few hours / days for *Pseudoalteromonas* sp. [3.55], the number of cells remains stable. After prolonged exposure, the accumulation of toxic metabolic products can be an additional growth-limiting factor, thus explaining the occurrence of the senescence phase. During this biological ageing / death phase, dying cells can undergo lysis [3.12].
Overall, cell attachment for *Pseudoalteromonas* sp. NCIMB 2021 occurred more readily when the cells were fresh and in significant numbers [3.55]. Recently, Salta *et al.* have studied the biofilm properties of *Pseudoalteromonas* sp. NCIMB 2021 on natural products incorporated in a paint system using a multidetection microplate reader (for real-time monitoring of biofouling rate and, together with a molecular probe technique, *in situ* quantifiable information of the viability and extent of biofilm) [3.62]. It was reported that a significant biofilm occurred on the control paint coating, compared with the greater antifouling properties of coatings containing natural products [3.62].

The influence of culture growth stage on attachment (for the *Pseudoalteromonas* bacteria) was discussed by Fletcher using two factors: (i) changes in cell motility (planktonic bacterial cell ability to spontaneously move is altered with age) and (ii) modifications in the quantity or quality of cell surface polymers (the production or secretion of EPS by bacteria declines with time) [3.55]. Likewise, the effect of temperature on bacterial attachment has also been studied [3.55]. The results showed that fewer bacteria were attached at low temperatures (3 ± 1 °C) compared with cells at 20 ± 1 °C. It has been suggested that two major characteristics could be associated with the thermal effect on attachment:

- The viscosity of the media increases as temperature decreases and can affect the bacterial cell motility.
- The physiology of the organisms may be affected by changes in temperature (Section 3.2.2.2) and in particular, high temperatures result in greater adsorption on the surface suitable for bacterial attachment.

In contrast, it was reported that *Pseudoalteromonas* sp. is psychrophilic and can hence acclimatise to changing conditions, for instance it has the ability to thrive at relatively low temperatures [3.55]. Similarly, no obvious differences of the cell membranes were detected using microscopy techniques and additional investigations on the attachment of *Pseudoalteromonas* sp. on a noble metal, such as Pt, have also revealed $\approx 15$ cells / $100 \ \mu m^2$ after a 2 h exposure [3.56], plus SEM analysis has highlighted naturally attached bacteria of roughly 0.7 µm in diameter [3.50].

Based on the knowledge developed in [3.50,3.54-3.56], the EIS growth media (alkaline, pH 8) will contain similar composition of carbon source level in pH $\approx 8$ media (relevant to seawater). In addition, bacterial cells will be kept at 18 °C and an estimate of the cell
density, and also the age of the bacterial growth phase / stage will be required before undertaking testing.

### 3.2.4 Monitoring bacterial biofilms under controlled conditions

#### 3.2.4.1 Experimental controllability: the background and context

To suit the biological requirements, a more detailed understanding on bacterial colonisation and growth processes (from an engineering perspective) is required. Importantly, there are only a few investigations in which a comprehensive and detailed analysis of problems associated with bacterial colonisation has been reported [3.12, 3.21-3.24, 3.63]. In order to limit experimental effects, the following steps are proposed:

- The electrochemical sensor should work *in situ* (rather than *ex situ*), see Section 2.6.

- The tests should be conducted under well-defined and controlled conditions, *i.e.* use of one marine aerobic bacterium species of known growth phase (*Pseudoalteromonas* sp. NCIMB 2021), constant temperature (18 °C for the species) and media salinity (35 ‰ in open seawater), buffer media (pH 8.1 in open seawater), continuous aeration (saturated DO level of ≈ 7 ppm), Faraday cage (minimise electromagnetic interference and tests in dark conditions at light irradiance values ≈ 0.0 µmol photons m\(^{-2}\) s\(^{-1}\)), and a well-defined hydrodynamic flow regime (low laminar flow).

- Additional precautions are necessary in performing any kind of microbiology experimentation, above those normally associated with surface engineering. All laboratory equipment should be sterilised before use. Gloves, white coat and goggles have to be worn when UV lighting is used. Contaminated materials have to be stored in suitable disposable boxes that will be later autoclaved. The nCATS laboratory has limited experience of these requirements. Therefore, key collaborations with other research groups within the UoS, including the NOC (Dr Iglesias-Rodriguez) and the SBS (Prof Keevil and Dr Webb) will resolve the facility issues. Additionally, access to the tissue engineering laboratory strengthened by the expertise of Dr Stoodley from nCATS will add value to this project.
Developing a laboratory system that can truly model the real world of biofilm growth and extent in addition to the inherent hydrodynamic conditions is a challenge. Such a system has to properly simulate the fluctuations of nutrient availability, growth and shear rates, changes incurred by predator-prey relationships and environmental conditions, the redox processes, pH, temperature, and also the physico-chemical properties of the surfaces investigated [3.64]. This section will address the suitability of two selected continuous culture systems (chemostat and flow cell devices) proposed for this study. Likewise, an established method to study the growth curve of a bacterial culture (marine flow cytometer) is considered.

A chemostat in Figure 3.6 is a continuous monospecies culture vessel to which fresh nutrient medium from a sterile reservoir is added and excess liquid (the efflux of exhausted medium, living cells and cellular debris) is removed to keep the culture volume constant [3.12, 3.28, 3.64-3.66]. The advantage of chemostat relies on its capability of triggering the rate of removal of the organism once the species growth rate is well-defined, see Equation 3.2 [3.64] used in Section 5.1.

\[
\frac{dx}{dt} = \mu_i x - D_i x \quad \text{and} \quad D_i = \frac{Q}{V}
\]

Consequently, a chemostat is a controlled bioreactor, which ensures good repeatability / reproducibility of the environment conditions. For instance, specific nutrient limitations with slow growth rates (as might be experienced in nature) can be setup using a chemostat [3.64]. Equation 3.2 for a monoculture chemostat is derived from continuous culture theory laid by Monod in France and Novick and Szilard in the USA [3.64]. For a defined monoculture system without loss, the culture concentration in the vessel at a given time corresponds to that which has been generated minus that removed.
Typical fermenter heads of chemostats in Figure 3.6 are made of Ti or SS for seawater applications (avoid leaching of Fe inside the culture medium) and are approximately 150 – 200 mm in diameter to be accommodated by 1 litre glass / Pyrex fermenter vessels [3.64]. In addition, a number of ports (12 – 19 mm in diameter) for housing electrodes and the aseptically insertion and retrieval of coupons (for subsequent microbiological and microscopic analyses) on the top can be used. Operating chemostats can employ 500 mL cultures in which, for instance fresh sterile medium can be introduced at a constant rate of 25 mL h\(^{-1}\) using a peristaltic pump, thus allowing a dilution rate of 0.05 h\(^{-1}\) (representative of \(t_d \approx 13.9\) h) [3.64,3.67]. The anti-grow-back system (Figure 3.6) is used to minimise grow-back of culture in the sterile medium reservoir. Typical stirrer speeds are 300 rpm to ensure liquid homogenisation. A continuous sterile air supply at 50 mL min\(^{-1}\) enables constant DO level in the chemostat pressurised with an atmosphere suitable for aerobes, see Figure 3.6. Likewise, Teflon-coated magnetic stirrer bars can be utilised, together with the heater pad, to both favour external heating and stirring maintained at 30 °C and 300 rpm, respectively [3.64,3.68]. Similarly, the culture volume inside the chemostat is kept constant using an overflow weir connected to a peristaltic pump. Importantly, a pH controller can automatically regulate the pH of the culture measured by an autoclavable pH electrode to maintain a pH 7.0 [3.64,3.68].
Ideally, the growth of *Pseudoalteromonas* sp. NCIMB 2021 strain should be controlled using a chemostat. However, it requires a costly experimental setup and needs expertise to run effectively, for instance to ensure a defined dilution rate with $D_i \leq \mu_b$ to avoid loss of cell population or washout. As there may be many microbiological factors that are not crucial for the preliminary understanding of the interfacial EIS response (when bacterial biofilms develop on the Au surface) an alternative culturing strategy may be more appropriate for this project.

Flow culturing systems are methods often used to study microbial adhesive interactions [3.69]. In particular, flow devices aimed at studying microbial adhesion to substratum surfaces under carefully controlled hydrodynamic and mass transport conditions [3.69]. After consultation on the pros and cons of chemostats and flow device systems with Prof Keevil and Dr Webb from the SBS, the flow culturing method has been identified as a suitable system to be combined with the EIS technique for the following reasons:

- Flow culturing systems setup is more straightforward than that for chemostat (no concern regarding $D_i \leq \mu_b$ and simple inoculation of the flow chamber with the species using a syringe). Similarly, Dr Webb from the SBS and Dr Stoodley from nCATS at the UoS have expertise on flow devices and associated experimental procedures [3.40,3.70,3.71].
- Flow devices enable the embedment of an electrochemical sensor to study bacterial attachment, and allow the control of the electrodes position and their relative distance within the flow channel dimensions [3.69,3.72].
- The flow culturing method is a potential first step approach to hydrodynamic operating systems, i.e. the fluid flow through a heat exchanger [3.21].
- The hydrodynamic properties of parallel plate flow chamber design are established [3.69]. An estimate of the thickness of the viscous sublayer ($\delta_l$ in Section 2.4.4.3) could be in good agreement with the size of biofilms [3.10,3.71].
Marine flow cytometers are used to characterise suspended particles (density, size and optical properties), within a hydrodynamically focused fluid stream, based on their individual fluorescence and light scattering properties where a single wavelength beam of light is used to excite the stream of fluid [3.73,3.74]. The flow cytometry technique can count, identify cells (based on their optical properties) and sort populations of interest from a heterogeneous sample, since similar particles usually exhibit common light scattering and fluorescence properties [3.73-3.75]. For instance, the fluorescence-activated cell sorter (FACSort), with $\lambda = 488$ nm for an Ar source, at NOC can be used to study particles ranging from the sub-micron level up to about 40 $\mu$m in size dimension [3.73]. The flow cytometer accuracy depends on the number of events per second rate (monitored within the sheath fluid), i.e. the number of bacterial cells detected per second [3.75]. However, the more this rate exceeds 1000 events per second, the less reliable is the measurable signal [3.73]. In order to minimise this counter effect, the threshold, which distinguishes useful signals from artefacts can be increased to remove excess noise. The flow rate of the sheath fluid for the hydrodynamically focused particles can also be reduced. In addition, moderate dilution can enhance accuracy of the measurable signal [3.73]. The Sideward light Scatter and Forward light Scatter modes of the FACSort instrument can be selected to record small size bacterial cells and to visualise stained cells, respectively [3.73,3.75]. The FACSort does not automatically generate cell counting as flow rates. Therefore, the liquid volume to be analysed has to be well-defined to count cells and 0.5 $\mu$m microspheres or beads at a known concentration and volume have to be added to the samples [3.73]. By counting the number of beads in a given sample, the liquid volume can be assessed. Thus, the volumetric concentration of any particles of interest is deduced [3.73]. By repeating this procedure with time, it is possible to generate a growth curve for bacterial species and do subsequent analyses, such as define the growth phases, and determine the bacterial cell population and also calculate $\mu_b$, see Section 5.1. Although flow cytometers are less accurate than chemostats, they are quick and straightforward to use for the proposed project. As a result, flow cytometry will be used to assess relevant microbiological factors of *Pseudoalteromonas* sp. NCIMB 2021, i.e. the growth phases, cell density and $\mu_b$ (Section 5.1).
3.2.5 Summary of experimental controllability

Section 3.2.4 has outlined the complexity incurred to the selection of a suitable continuous culture device that should meet biological and physico-chemical requirements with regard to real operating systems. A chemostat may be viewed as the most realistic laboratory scale approach to date but is probably an overly complex system to setup and fully address for the proposed engineering project. In this instance, a flow cell device in which an electrochemical sensor can be embedded offers flexible opportunities for bacterial biofilm monitoring in a controlled environment. The modified flow cell configuration incorporating the sensor will be similar to those used by Dr Webb (SBS) and Dr Stoodley (nCATS) at the UoS to ensure a reproducible method to study bacterial attachment within the flow chamber. In agreement with the concluding remark in Section 2.4.4.6, a low laminar flow regime \( R_e \approx 1 \) will be used for the EIS testing (see Chapter 4 for a detailed discussion). In accordance with Sections 3.2.2 and 3.2.3 (complete description of the experimental protocol in Chapter 4), the EIS experiments will be made within a Faraday cage in NOC laboratory temperature controlled conditions at 18 ± 1 °C. Similarly, fresh, aseptic and continuously aerated, and also buffered ASW solutions (enriched with organic carbon source and of known chemical composition) will be prepared. Likewise, the physico-chemical properties of the media (conductivity, pH and DO level) will be measured before testing. In addition, the equipment such as the electrochemical sensors, flow chambers, reservoir vessels, tubes, and media will be sterilised and / or sealed to avoid air contaminants. The growth curve of Pseudoalteromonas sp. NCIMB 2021 will be studied using flow cytometry, thus allowing assessment of the corresponding cell population for a specific growth phase / stage and an estimate of the growth rate.

Although nature seawater is composed of many different microorganisms (which may affect the chemical properties of the surrounding environment), working with a single bacterial strain (not realistic to natural systems) is necessary in order to provide greater controllability. However, once the sensor response has been characterised and determined to be capable of detecting a well-defined bacterial species, the applicability of the measurement procedure will then be assessed for the more complex systems, for example sampled seawater.
Chapter 4 – Experimental details
4.1 Surface characterisation

Optical microscopy and surface optical profilometry were performed using an Olympus BH2-UMA with the digital images rendered using Motic MCCamera software (Camera: Moticam 1000, 1.3 million pixel, USB 2.0) and a Zygo NewView™ 7000 Series profiler to assess the performance of the Au electrode polishing.

4.2 Specifications of the Au electrode

The 0.2 mm diameter Au electrodes consisted of:

- a 0.2 mm diameter Au wire (Goodfellow) with metallic impurities determined as follows: 6 ppm Fe, 9 ppm palladium (Pd), 4 ppm Pt and 7 ppm rhodium (Rh),
- a 5 mm diameter glass housing in which the Au wire was embedded and,
- a Ni / Pt wire to make the electric contact, see Figure 4.1.

![Figure 4.1. Schematic of the 0.2 mm diameter Au electrode.](image-url)
4.3 Au surface preparation

The 0.2 mm diameter Au electrode surfaces were ground and polished before testing. Table 4.1 shows the different grinding and polishing steps utilised. The electrodes were cleaned using an ultrasonic bath (Ultrawave cleaning solution, i.e. Ultraclean M Formula II with about 25 – 50 mL of detergent for 1 L of water) for 5 – 10 minutes between each grinding and polishing step to prevent contamination to successive cloths.

Table 4.1. Grinding and polishing method used for pure Au.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Process</th>
<th>Grinding</th>
<th>Polishing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Surface / Paste</td>
<td>#1200</td>
<td>#4000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lubricant Type</td>
<td>Water</td>
<td>Water</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Speed / rpm</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Holder direction</td>
<td>→</td>
<td>↑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time / min</td>
<td>1-2</td>
<td>1-2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Struers DP-Blue and DP-Red lubricating liquids were used with the diamond polishing pastes. The final polishing step was achieved using a 0.3 µm Al₂O₃ powder. Polishing of the 0.2 mm diameter Au electrodes was not straightforward since Au is a ductile metal and great care is required to remove scratches without generating more. Thus, the polishing cloths needed to be clean and free of any contamination. Using the optimised procedure, as described in Table 4.1, a good electrode surface was obtained, see Figure 4.2.
**Figure 4.2.** Optical microscopy image showing the 0.2 mm diameter Au electrode surface after grinding and polishing steps as detailed in Table 4.1. The scale was determined using a graticule, Tonbridge, Kent, England (100 x 0.01 mm).

The surface profile of the 0.2 mm diameter Au electrode obtained using the Zygo optical profiler shows a concave feature due to the ductile nature of the Au and harder glass at the edges of the surface electrode, see Figures 4.3(a) and 4.3(b).
Figure 4.3. (a) Surface optical profile showing the 0.2 mm diameter Au electrode surface with pronounced glass edge effects after grinding and polishing steps in Table 4.1 and (b) the root mean square roughness of the profile, $R_{\text{rms}} = 0.367 \ \mu m$.

However, the root mean square roughness $R_{\text{rms}} = 0.104 \ \mu m$ of the Au surface (with limited glass edge effects) in Figures 4.4(a) and 4.4(b) was about three times lower than that in Figures 4.3(a) and 4.3(b) (with pronounced glass edge effects), $R_{\text{rms}} = 0.367 \ \mu m$. 
Figure 4.4. (a) Surface optical profile showing the 0.2 mm diameter Au electrode surface with limited glass edge effects after grinding and polishing steps in Table 4.1 and (b) the root mean square roughness of the profile, $R_{\text{rms}} = 0.104 \mu m$.

Overall, the $R_{\text{rms}}$ value of 0.104 µm was acceptable for the experimental work programme, since the roughness was both below the Al₂O₃ powder size (0.3 µm) of the last polishing step in Table 4.1 and the actual size of a bacteria cell from the genus *Pseudoalteromonas* (which is typically about 1 µm in size [4.1]). After polishing, the 0.2 mm diameter Au electrodes were cleaned using an ultrasonic bath for 5 – 10 minutes, rinsed thoroughly with ethanol to remove any remaining organic material / debris and dried using a Metaserv specimen dryer.
4.4 Test solutions

The freshly prepared, 0.22 μm filtered and flush test solutions were (i) 3.5 % NaCl solution at pH 8.0, (ii) abiotic ASW, ASW with a single aerobic *Pseudoalteromonas* sp. strain NCIMB 2021, and also (iii) ASW with 500 nM of the NO donor SNP (using SNP crystals dissolved in ASW and flushed into the flow cell) on a 72 h-old biofilmed Au surface. In particular, the fresh SNP solution was protected against light (0.12 ± 0.01 μmol photons m⁻² s⁻¹) and kept over a maximum 12 h duration before being changed to minimise light side effects [4.2,4.3]. The abiotic ASW at a pH 8.1 contained dissolved salts and metal-ions, vitamins and nutrients [4.4], see Table 4.2. Although the seawater composition by Riegman *et al.* (Table 4.2) has been commonly approved in the published literature, the concentration of sodium bicarbonate (NaHCO₃) may be twice as high as to that for natural seawater. After discussions with Dr Iglesias-Rodriguez (NOC), it was suggested that this bacterial growth environment can correspond to nutrient-replete conditions (as opposed to nutrient-limited conditions), thus favouring the exponential bacterial growth for heterotrophic bacteria (Section 3.2.3.2). In addition, 0.1 % (w/v) tryptone and 0.07 % (w/v) yeast extract were added to enhance the abiotic ASW organic carbon levels, resulting in a similar test condition to [4.5]. Alternatively, a control ASW (see Chapter 5) test solution made of dissolved salts and metal ions, and also ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid (EDTA) to keep metal ions in solution (Table 4.3), was used to support the discussion in Section 5.8. All the prepared solutions were made at the NOC using 18.2 MΩ cm Milli-Q water.

4.4.1 Bio-chemical characteristics of the test media

In comparison with the abiotic ASW and ASW with *Pseudoalteromonas* sp., the 3.5 % NaCl solution was free of organic matter and represents a sterile condition, and also a typical control test to assess the ORR in alkaline conditions [4.4]. In addition, compared to ASW with *Pseudoalteromonas* sp., the abiotic ASW was free of living organisms but still contained organic matter, which was able to pass through the 0.22 μm filter. This coincided with a baseline for an adsorbed organic material (conditioning film) on the Au surface [4.7,4.8]. The *Pseudoalteromonas* sp. inoculated in ASW represented a more complex biochemical media, which contained organic material and living organisms (biotic). The environment for the test solution using ASW with the NO donor SNP was also biotic due to the presence of *Pseudoalteromonas* sp. biofilms on the Au surface, see Table 4.4.
Table 4.2. Composition of seawater: Riegman et al., adapted from [4.4] – anhydrous (ANH) stands for a substance that contains no water.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chemical</th>
<th>Molar mass / g mol(^{-1})</th>
<th>Concentration / mol L(^{-1})</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NaCl</td>
<td>58.44</td>
<td>0.42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MgCl(_2).6H(_2)O</td>
<td>203.31</td>
<td>54.4 \times 10^{-3}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CaCl(_2).2H(_2)O</td>
<td>147.02</td>
<td>10.5 \times 10^{-3}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Na(_2)SO(_4)</td>
<td>142.04</td>
<td>22.7 \times 10^{-3}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>K(_2)SO(_4)</td>
<td>174.27</td>
<td>4.9 \times 10^{-3}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NaHCO(_3)</td>
<td>84.01</td>
<td>4500 \times 10^{-6}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d-Biotin</td>
<td>244.3</td>
<td>0.164 \times 10^{-9}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thiamine-HCl</td>
<td>337.3</td>
<td>59.3 \times 10^{-9}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cyanocobalamin</td>
<td>1355.4</td>
<td>0.59 \times 10^{-9}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FeCl(_3)(ANH)</td>
<td>162.21</td>
<td>5.86 \times 10^{-6}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NaEDTA.2H(_2)O</td>
<td>372.2</td>
<td>5.85 \times 10^{-6}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CuSO(_4).5H(_2)O</td>
<td>249.68</td>
<td>0.02 \times 10^{-6}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZnSO(_4).7H(_2)O</td>
<td>287.5</td>
<td>0.038 \times 10^{-6}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CoCl(_2).6H(_2)O</td>
<td>237.9</td>
<td>0.021 \times 10^{-6}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MnCl(_2).4H(_2)O</td>
<td>197.9</td>
<td>0.46 \times 10^{-6}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Na(_2)MoO(_4).2H(_2)O</td>
<td>241.95</td>
<td>0.012 \times 10^{-6}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KBr</td>
<td>119.01</td>
<td>92.4 \times 10^{-6}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SrCl(_2).6H(_2)O</td>
<td>266.62</td>
<td>13.4 \times 10^{-6}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AlCl(_3).6H(_2)O</td>
<td>241.43</td>
<td>0.1 \times 10^{-6}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LiCl</td>
<td>42.39</td>
<td>0.071 \times 10^{-6}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KI</td>
<td>166.01</td>
<td>0.06 \times 10^{-6}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H(_3)BO(_3)</td>
<td>61.83</td>
<td>3.2 \times 10^{-8}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RbCl</td>
<td>120.92</td>
<td>0.36 \times 10^{-8}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NaNO(_3)</td>
<td>84.99</td>
<td>100 \times 10^{-6}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Na(_2)HPO(_4)</td>
<td>119.98</td>
<td>6.24 \times 10^{-8}</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 4.3. Composition of the control ASW (see Figures 5.10 and 5.11 in Section 5.8) medium based on Riegman et al., adapted from \[4.4\].

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chemical</th>
<th>Molar mass / g mol$^{-1}$</th>
<th>Concentration / mol L$^{-1}$</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NaCl</td>
<td>58.44</td>
<td>0.42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MgCl$_2$.6H$_2$O</td>
<td>203.31</td>
<td>$54.4 \times 10^{-3}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CaCl$_2$.2H$_2$O</td>
<td>147.02</td>
<td>$10.5 \times 10^{-3}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Na$_2$SO$_4$</td>
<td>142.04</td>
<td>$22.7 \times 10^{-3}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>K$_2$SO$_4$</td>
<td>174.27</td>
<td>$4.9 \times 10^{-3}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FeCl$_3$(ANH)$_2$</td>
<td>162.21</td>
<td>$5.86 \times 10^{-3}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NaEDTA.2H$_2$O</td>
<td>372.2</td>
<td>$5.85 \times 10^{-3}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CuSO$_4$.5H$_2$O</td>
<td>249.68</td>
<td>$0.02 \times 10^{-6}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZnSO$_4$.7H$_2$O</td>
<td>287.5</td>
<td>$0.038 \times 10^{-6}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CoCl$_2$.6H$_2$O</td>
<td>237.9</td>
<td>$0.021 \times 10^{-6}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MnCl$_2$.4H$_2$O</td>
<td>197.9</td>
<td>$0.46 \times 10^{-6}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Na$_2$MoO$_4$.2H$_2$O</td>
<td>241.95</td>
<td>$0.012 \times 10^{-6}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KBr</td>
<td>119.01</td>
<td>$92.4 \times 10^{-6}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SrCl$_2$.6H$_2$O</td>
<td>266.62</td>
<td>$13.4 \times 10^{-6}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AlCl$_3$.6H$_2$O</td>
<td>241.43</td>
<td>$0.1 \times 10^{-6}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LiCl</td>
<td>42.39</td>
<td>$0.071 \times 10^{-6}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KI</td>
<td>166.01</td>
<td>$0.06 \times 10^{-6}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H$_2$BO$_3$</td>
<td>61.83</td>
<td>$3.2 \times 10^{-6}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RbCl</td>
<td>120.92</td>
<td>$0.36 \times 10^{-6}$</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 4.4. Biochemical characteristics of the test media.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Media</th>
<th>Biochemical characteristics</th>
<th>Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3.5 % NaCl, pH 8.0</td>
<td>Organic free – Sterile</td>
<td>Baseline for the ORR (3.5 % NaCl in Chapter 5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.1 % (w/v) tryptone and 0.07 % (w/v) yeast extract in ASW (Table 4.2), pH 8.1 [4,4.5]</td>
<td>Organic matter – Sterile – Abiotic</td>
<td>Baseline for a conditioning film (adsorbed organic layer) (Abiotic ASW in Chapter 5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Control ASW test solution (Table 4.3)</td>
<td>EDTA – Sterile – Abiotic</td>
<td>Baseline for complex metal-ions (Control ASW in Chapter 5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.1 % (w/v) tryptone and 0.07 % (w/v) yeast extract in ASW (Table 4.2) with 200 µL aliquot of 2h-old <em>Pseudoalteromonas</em> sp. strain NCIMB 2021 culture, pH 8.1</td>
<td>Organic matter – Non-sterile – Biotic</td>
<td>Biofilm (Biotic ASW in Chapter 5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>500 nM of the NO donor SNP [4.9] in 0.1 % (w/v) tryptone and 0.07 % (w/v) yeast extract in ASW (Table 4.2), pH 8.1 on a 72 h-old biofilmed Au surface</td>
<td>Organic matter – Non-sterile – Biotic – Environmentally friendly biocide</td>
<td>Biofilm dispersal (500 nM SNP in ASW, see Chapter 5)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4.4.2 Physico-chemical properties of the test media

The physico-chemical properties of the test media in Table 4.4: conductivity, DO, pH and temperature were assessed before each test (Table 4.5), thus allowing any variations to be identified with regard to typical values reported in nature in the North Atlantic Ocean, see Section 3.1.2. The conductivity, DO level and pH of the solutions were measured using an ATI Orion model 162 conductivity meter, a Hanna Instruments HI9145 DO probe with a water movement of about 0.3 m s⁻¹ and a Hanna Instruments HI99129 Combo probe, respectively. All experiments were made under laboratory temperature controlled conditions at 18 ± 1 °C using the NOC facilities.
Table 4.5. Comparison of the physico-chemical properties of the media measured before testing (0 h).  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Properties</th>
<th>Test Media</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3.5 % NaCl, pH 8.0</td>
<td>0.1 % (w/v) tryptone and 0.07 % (w/v) yeast extract in ASW (Table 4.2), pH 8.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.1 % (w/v) tryptone and 0.07 % (w/v) yeast extract in ASW (Table 4.2), pH 8.1</td>
<td>Control ASW test solution (Table 4.3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.1 % (w/v) tryptone and 0.07 % (w/v) yeast extract in ASW (Table 4.2), pH 8.1</td>
<td>500 nM of the NO donor SNP in 0.1 % (w/v) tryptone and 0.07 % (w/v) yeast extract in ASW (Table 4.2), pH 8.1 on a 72 h-old biofilm Au surface</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.5 % NaCl in Chapter 5</td>
<td>Abiotic ASW in Chapter 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Control ASW in Chapter 5</td>
<td>Biotic ASW in Chapter 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>500 nM SNP in ASW, see Chapter 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conductivity / mS cm⁻¹</th>
<th>50.4 at 22 °C</th>
<th>49.5 at 21.5 °C</th>
<th>49.6 at 21.7 °C</th>
<th>49.9 at 21.8 °C</th>
<th>47.9 at 20.1 °C</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DO level / ppm</td>
<td>6.90</td>
<td>6.90</td>
<td>6.90</td>
<td>6.90</td>
<td>6.90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pH</td>
<td>8.0</td>
<td>8.1</td>
<td>8.1</td>
<td>8.1</td>
<td>8.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Temperature / °C</td>
<td>18.5</td>
<td>18.9</td>
<td>18.6</td>
<td>18.8</td>
<td>18.5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The conductivity measurements of the freshly prepared laboratory solutions (NaCl and ASW media) were consistent with a salinity of 35 ‰ and representative of typical values found in open surface seawaters. Overall, the test had an alkaline pH 8.0 ± 0.2, which is within the range normally cited for seawater, i.e. pH 7.7 to 8.3 for surface waters. The temperature of 18 ± 1 °C was acceptable for seawater since it can range in Figure 4.5 between 5 and 22 °C (the winter and summer extremes). In addition, the average value of 6.90 ppm for the DO level was in agreement with aerated surface seawater (where it can vary substantially in Figure 4.5).

![Seawater DO concentration and temperature measured at the NOC site, from [4.10].](image)

The corresponding solutions in Table 4.5 have remained clear over the entire test duration, thus showing the absence of backflow that could have affected the results in Chapter 5.
4.4.3 Summary of the test media analysis

Overall, the freshly prepared laboratory solutions, i.e. 3.5 % NaCl test solution, abiotic and biotic ASW media with a salinity close to 35 ‰, pH ≈ 8, temperature of 18 ± 1 °C and DO content of ≈ 6.90 ppm were representative of surface seawater from the North Atlantic equilibrated with the atmosphere [4.11]. The information obtained from these measurements in bulk water analysis have limited significance and cannot be representative of the Au / ASW interface, but should remain relatively constant to minimise an influence on a biofilm. This can be explained by the limited diffusion behaviour of biofilms, where the chemical composition within and nearby these biological systems can vary significantly within a few micrometers [4.12]. A suitable residence time should be used within the flow chamber, i.e. it should be long enough for bacterial adhesion (see Section 4.6.2) and sufficiently short to ensure constant supply of DO level (6.90 ppm) during bacterial biofilm growth and extent. Ideally, the physico-chemical properties of the test media should therefore be monitored in situ within and nearby the sensing site.

4.5 Pseudoalteromonas sp. NCIMB 2021 strain growth characteristics

4.5.1 Sub-culture of Pseudoalteromonas sp. into solid agar media

The marine aerobic bacterium Pseudoalteromonas sp. NCIMB 2021 strain was supplied in freeze-dried bacterial cultures from the NCIMB in Aberdeen, UK. The certificate of authenticity n°11479 for NCIMB parent cultures was provided by Dr Peter N Green, the NCIMB Curator. The contents were in a vacuum-sealed ampoule, which were to be opened for the germination of cultures under aseptic conditions using a flame. A small volume (0.5 mL) of an autoclaved agar solution, similar to the NCIMB Medium 210, was added to the ampoule and the contents mixed, avoiding frothing. The 1 L pH 7.3 agar solution contained: 3.0 g of yeast extract, 5.0 g of tryptone, 15.0 g agar, 0.750 L of 0.22 µm filtered aged seawater (seawater from the Solent kept 3 – 4 months in the dark in controlled temperature room at 6 ± 1 °C) and 250 mL 18.2 MΩ cm Milli-Q water. Then, 200 µL of media inocula, i.e. the initial content of the ampoule, plus agar solution, was dropped using a micropipette into a solid agar sterile Petri dish (made with 20 mL of agar solution using the NCIMB Medium 210 and dried at room temperature under aseptic conditions). A sterile bioloop was then used to spread the inoculum on the agar plate. The rest of the ampoule contents (not necessary for the
experiments) were autoclaved and safely disposed off in biohazard bags. The agar plates inoculated with *Pseudoalteromonas* sp. were cultured in a controlled temperature room of $18 \pm 1^\circ C$. After 2–3 days of growth, distinct microcolonies were observed on the agar plate. The procedure of subculturing was repeated more than once by picking-up one single microcolony from a culture plate and inoculating a sterile agar Petri dish, plus subsequent spreading using a sterile bioloop. As recommended by NCIMB, this is a precaution against accidents and ensures a viable culture (resuscitated freeze-dried cultures tend to exhibit a lengthened lag period).

### 4.5.2 *Pseudoalteromonas* sp. growth curve establishment

A continuously aerated and stirred sterile standard batch culture containing 250 mL agar NCIMB medium 210 solution was used to grow *Pseudoalteromonas* sp. strain NCIMB 2021 over 72 h in a controlled temperature room of $18 \pm 1^\circ C$. A series of three 2 mL samples were collected from the batch culture at different time intervals, *i.e.* 0 h, 4 h, 21 h and 72 h, to allow time-dependent bacterial cell populations assessment using a FACsort marine flow cytometer (*Ar* source at $\lambda = 488 \text{ nm}$) at the NOC. Also, two series of three samples diluted 10 and 100 times were prepared. This ensured measurable signals from the flow cytometer (poor measurements due to either too dense or excessively diluted samples), see Section 3.2.4.2. A 1 % final concentration paraformaldehyde was used in each sample as a fixative to kill *Pseudoalteromonas* sp. cells and preserve their membranes. All the samples were mixed using a vortex and then stored at $-20^\circ C$. Prior to doing flow cytometry measurements, all the samples were defrosted in an oven at $35^\circ C$ for about 5–10 minutes. A series of 580 µL samples in polystyrene rand-bottom tubes were prepared with a 500 µL culturing solution, 5 µL DNA-Stain SYBr Green I (Sigma-Aldrich) at a ratio of 1:100, 50 µL potassium citrate solution at a ratio 1:10 and 25 µL of bead stock solution from NOC, *i.e.* containing 1,125,485 beads per mL. All contents were thoroughly mixed to ensure solution homogeneity. This procedure allowed the preparation of 200 µL aliquots of 2 h-old *Pseudoalteromonas* sp. culture (inoculum) for the electrochemical experiments in Chapter 5. Similarly, the protocol for growth curve establishment was repeated within the flow cell to address any variability in comparison with the standard batch culture, see Section 5.1. Ideally, the batch culture content should be identical to the ASW test solution to minimise environmental stresses toward bacterial cells. In that instance, however, the NCIMB Medium 210 was chosen and recommended by the NCIMB in Aberdeen, UK as a standard growth solution for *Pseudoalteromonas* sp. strain NCIMB 2021.
4.6 Flow cell arrangement

A modified once through flow cell device was designed to operate under a controlled low laminar flow condition ($R_e \approx 1$), see Figure 4.6. The overall system consists of a new engineering approach to study initial bacterial biofilms development and extent under a controlled flow cell environment. The flow cell arrangement hosted three embedded flush electrodes for the EIS experiments. EIS was chosen as a suitable non-destructive electrochemical method to monitor biofilm over time (see Sections 2.6.4.3 and 2.6.5 for a detailed description of the EIS technique) [4.13]. The modified flow cell system had a 0.2 mm diameter Au working electrode mounted on the top surface to avoid gravitational effects, a homemade Ag/AgCl – saturated 3.5 M KCl solution reference electrode and graphite counter electrode mounted on opposing sides to ensure good repeatability of the electrodes position and their relative distance using the flow channel dimensions, see Figure 4.6. Whereas the Ag/AgCl reference electrode is appropriate for seawater systems [4.14,4.15], the graphite counter electrode is commonly used as an electrically conductive and high surface material (limitations of measurement interferences with the working electrode) [4.16]. The Au electrodes were sealed under reduced pressure in a soda glass pipette using a heating coil as described in [4.17] before being embedded in the flow cell device.

![Figure 4.6. Schematic illustration of the flow cell electrode arrangement for EIS measurements.](image)
The once-through flow cell (5 × 6 × 40 mm) was made of polycarbonate (PC) and was similar to a configuration utilised by Dr Webb from the SBS at the UoS. The PC material is generally not recommended for autoclaves since this can result in crazing or cracking due to moulding stresses. However, PC is often used for marine bacteria settlement studies in flowing seawater [4.18,4.19].

4.6.1 Flow cell channel design

The flow cell channel was designed to minimise abrupt fluid distortion of the ingoing and outgoing flow, which can lead to turbulence effects. A series of Upchurch connectors were used to enlarge and narrow the flow at the inlet and outlet, respectively. They were associated with two 6 degree conical angle diffusers to minimise flow separation and pressure losses incurred by sudden enlargements or contractions [4.20-4.22]. These configurations represent a good compromise, where the included angle $\theta_K$ is sufficiently small to limit separation, flow eddy, pressure losses, but large enough to minimise frictional losses, see Figures 4.7 and 4.8.

![Figure 4.7. Loss of pressure in a conical diffuser, from [4.20].](image-url)
In this configuration (Figure 4.8), the theoretical mean velocity ($u$) decreased by a factor of ten (from 20 to $0.2 \times 10^{-3}$ m s$^{-1}$) when the fluid entered the flow chamber, see Table 4.6. A silicone rubber (biocompatible elastomer) gasket was also used to seal the two flow cell sections.

Table 4.6. Calculations of mean velocities at different (inlet / outlet) positions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I</th>
<th>II</th>
<th>III</th>
<th>IV</th>
<th>V</th>
<th>VI</th>
<th>VII</th>
<th>VIII</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Marprene tubing</td>
<td>P-692</td>
<td>P-652</td>
<td>P-669-01</td>
<td>P-672 + 10-32 FB NanoPort</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ø 0.63 mm (bore)</td>
<td>Ø 0.5 mm (through-hole)</td>
<td>Ø 0.75 mm (through-hole)</td>
<td>Ø 1.00 mm (through-hole)</td>
<td>Ø 1.25 mm (through-hole)</td>
<td>Ø 2.00 mm (through-hole)</td>
<td>$D_h = 3.00$ mm</td>
<td>$D_h = 5.45$ mm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$20 \times 10^{-3}$ m s$^{-1}$</td>
<td>$30 \times 10^{-3}$ m s$^{-1}$</td>
<td>$13 \times 10^{-3}$ m s$^{-1}$</td>
<td>$7.5 \times 10^{-3}$ m s$^{-1}$</td>
<td>$5 \times 10^{-3}$ m s$^{-1}$</td>
<td>$2 \times 10^{-3}$ m s$^{-1}$</td>
<td>$0.5 \times 10^{-3}$ m s$^{-1}$</td>
<td>$0.2 \times 10^{-3}$ m s$^{-1}$</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4.6.2 Hydrodynamic regime

As the flow cell geometry can have a significant effect on biofilm thickness and morphology (Section 2.4.4.5), a comparative study of flow cell dimensions (from the published literature) and the corresponding hydrodynamic parameters is addressed in Table 4.7, thus allowing the justification of the flow cell channel design and the operating flow regime for the proposed project. In addition, this investigation is based on theoretical computations for clean tubes in a standard 35 % seawater environment at 20 °C.
Table 4.7. Comparison of the dimensions and theoretical hydrodynamic parameters of different flow cell configurations – calculations representative of the conditions VIII in Table 4.6 for a 35 ‰ seawater environment ($\mu = 1.07 \times 10^{-3}$ kg m$^{-1}$ s$^{-1}$ and $\nu_k = 1.05 \times 10^{-6}$ m$^2$ s$^{-1}$ at 20 °C) – * is indicative of potential concerns for the flow cell dimensions and / or flow regime.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Flow cell geometry</th>
<th>$b$ / (m) $\times 10^{-3}$</th>
<th>$w'$ / (m) $\times 10^{-3}$</th>
<th>$w'/b$</th>
<th>$l'$ / (m) $\times 10^{-3}$</th>
<th>$W'$ / (m) $\times 10^{-5}$</th>
<th>$A'$ / (m$^2$) $\times 10^{-6}$</th>
<th>$D_h$ or $d$ / (m) $\times 10^{-3}$</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Webb et al. [4.19]</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>4.0</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>40.0</td>
<td>10.0</td>
<td>4.0</td>
<td>1.60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stoodley et al. [4.30]</td>
<td>10.0</td>
<td>5.0</td>
<td>0.5</td>
<td>250.0</td>
<td>30.0</td>
<td>50.0</td>
<td>6.67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stoodley et al. [4.31]</td>
<td>6.0</td>
<td>10.0</td>
<td>10/6</td>
<td>45.0</td>
<td>32.0</td>
<td>60.0</td>
<td>7.50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stoodley et al. [4.25]</td>
<td>10.0</td>
<td>5.0</td>
<td>0.5</td>
<td>240.0</td>
<td>30.0</td>
<td>50.0</td>
<td>6.67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stoodley et al. [4.26] and Dunsmore et al. [4.29]</td>
<td>3.0</td>
<td>3.0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>200.0</td>
<td>12.0</td>
<td>9.0</td>
<td>3.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Salek et al. [4.24]</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>5.0</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>100.0</td>
<td>12.0</td>
<td>5.0</td>
<td>1.67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2.0</td>
<td>2.0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>100.0</td>
<td>8.0</td>
<td>4.0</td>
<td>2.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bayoudh et al. [4.23]</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>35.0</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>154.0</td>
<td>14.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Current study</td>
<td>6.0</td>
<td>5.0</td>
<td>5/6</td>
<td>40.0</td>
<td>22.0</td>
<td>30.0</td>
<td>5.45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flow cell geometry</td>
<td>Hydrodynamic parameters</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$Q / m^3 \text{s}^{-1}$</td>
<td>$u / m \text{s}^{-1}$</td>
<td>$R_s$</td>
<td>$L_c / m$</td>
<td>Percentage of chamber length corresponding to hydrodynamically fully developed conditions</td>
<td>$r_n / \text{Pa}$</td>
<td>$\Delta P / \text{Pa}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Webb et al. [4.19]</td>
<td>$2.50 \times 10^{-6}$</td>
<td>$0.625 \times 10^{-3}$</td>
<td>0.95</td>
<td>$91.43 \times 10^{-6}$</td>
<td>99.8</td>
<td>$3.34 \times 10^{-3}$</td>
<td>$95.26 \times 10^{-3}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stoodley et al. [4.30]</td>
<td>$4.50 \times 10^{-6}$</td>
<td>$90.0 \times 10^{-3}$</td>
<td>571.43</td>
<td>$228.69 \times 10^{-3}$</td>
<td>8.5*</td>
<td>0.12</td>
<td>4.01</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stoodley et al. [4.31]</td>
<td>$1.40 \times 10^{-6}$</td>
<td>$23.3 \times 10^{-3}$</td>
<td>166.43</td>
<td>$74.89 \times 10^{-3}$</td>
<td>$L_c &gt; l'$</td>
<td>26.60</td>
<td>$10^{-3}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stoodley et al. [4.25]</td>
<td>$2.40 \times 10^{-6}$</td>
<td>$40.0 \times 10^{-3}$</td>
<td>285.71</td>
<td>$128.57 \times 10^{-3}$</td>
<td>$L_c &gt; l'$</td>
<td>45.65</td>
<td>$10^{-3}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stoodley et al. [4.26]</td>
<td>$1.20 \times 10^{-6}$</td>
<td>$24.0 \times 10^{-3}$</td>
<td>152.38</td>
<td>$60.98 \times 10^{-3}$</td>
<td>74.6*</td>
<td>30.80</td>
<td>$10^{-3}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stoodley et al. [4.25]</td>
<td>$25.25 \times 10^{-6}$</td>
<td>0.5</td>
<td>$3174.60^*$</td>
<td>$112.51 \times 10^{-3}$</td>
<td>53.1*</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Salek et al. [4.24]</td>
<td>$9.0 \times 10^{-6}$</td>
<td>1.0*</td>
<td>$2857.14^*$</td>
<td>$49.72 \times 10^{-3}$</td>
<td>75.1*</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dunsmore et al. [4.29]</td>
<td>$9.0 \times 10^{-6}$</td>
<td>$10.0 \times 10^{-3}$</td>
<td>28.57</td>
<td>$5.14 \times 10^{-3}$</td>
<td>97.4</td>
<td>$28.53 \times 10^{-3}$</td>
<td>1.69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dunsmore et al. [4.29]</td>
<td>$0.36 \times 10^{-6}$</td>
<td>$40.0 \times 10^{-3}$</td>
<td>114.29</td>
<td>$20.57 \times 10^{-3}$</td>
<td>89.7*</td>
<td>0.11</td>
<td>6.77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dunsmore et al. [4.29]</td>
<td>$0.90 \times 10^{-6}$</td>
<td>0.1</td>
<td>$285.71$</td>
<td>$51.43 \times 10^{-3}$</td>
<td>74.2*</td>
<td>0.28</td>
<td>16.91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dunsmore et al. [4.29]</td>
<td>$3.60 \times 10^{-6}$</td>
<td>0.4</td>
<td>$1142.86$</td>
<td>$205.71 \times 10^{-3}$</td>
<td>$L_c &gt; l'$</td>
<td>1.14</td>
<td>67.66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bayoudeh et al. [4.23]</td>
<td>$33.30 \times 10^{-6}$</td>
<td>$6.67 \times 10^{-3}$</td>
<td>10.59</td>
<td>$1.06 \times 10^{-3}$</td>
<td>98.9</td>
<td>$34.19 \times 10^{-3}$</td>
<td>2.45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bayoudeh et al. [4.23]</td>
<td>$33.30 \times 10^{-6}$</td>
<td>$8.34 \times 10^{-3}$</td>
<td>15.89</td>
<td>$1.91 \times 10^{-3}$</td>
<td>98.1</td>
<td>$35.70 \times 10^{-3}$</td>
<td>1.58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Current study</td>
<td>$5.83 \times 10^{-6}$</td>
<td>$0.195 \times 10^{-3}$</td>
<td>1.01</td>
<td>$0.33 \times 10^{-3}$</td>
<td>99.2</td>
<td>$0.31 \times 10^{-3}$</td>
<td>1.99</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
4.6.2.1 Flow cell dimensions

Apart from Bayoudh et al. [4.23] who used a relatively large 14 mm diameter circular straight channel, the flow cell dimensions were within the same order of magnitude in terms of cross sectional area ranging between 4.0 and $60.0 \times 10^{-8}$ m$^2$, and hydraulic diameter (Equation 4.1), which ranged between 1.60 and $7.50 \times 10^{-3}$ m. As result, this reinforces the suitability of the flow cell geometry (5 × 6 × 40 mm) for the current study.

$$D_h = \frac{4A'}{W'}$$  \hspace{1cm} (4.1)

where $D_h$ is the hydraulic diameter utilised to compute hydrodynamic parameters for non-circular straight pipes (e.g. use of $D_h$ in Equation 2.19 to calculate the Reynolds number for rectangular straight pipes) [4.20-4.22], $W'$ the wetted perimeter of the rectangular cross-section (Equation 4.2) [4.24] and $A'$ the cross sectional area of the flow chamber.

$$W' = 2(b + w')$$  \hspace{1cm} (4.2)

with $b$ the depth and $w'$ the width of the flow chamber. In addition, it must be emphasised that the $D_h$ model is limited by side ratios, where $w'/b$ values greater than 4 (when the rectangular cross-section departs further from a circular one) can potentially induce flow prediction errors [4.22]. This might be an issue for the configuration proposed by Webb et al. [4.19] and Salek et al. [4.24].

4.6.2.2 Flow regime and entrance length

Most of the flow cells in Table 4.7 were operating in a laminar flow regime to study bacterial adhesion with the exemption of Stoodley et al. [4.25,4.26], where higher flow conditions ($R_e \approx 3,000$) were also employed in order to examine the effect of flow on a biofilm (oscillation of biofilm streamers under flowing conditions [4.25] and localised growth and detachment events [4.26]). In addition, significantly low $R_c$ values < 10 were reported by Webb et al. [4.19] and Bayoudh et al. [4.23] to study bacterial attachment and colonisation at a very low laminar regime. These conditions (and in
particular for the proposed approach) may represent enhanced controllable flow cell systems for bacterial growth, where the flow will have minimum effect on a biofilm. In contrast, the use of high velocity, e.g. \( u = 1 \text{ m s}^{-1} \) (relevant to marine heat exchanger pipes), may need to be further addressed. In this instance, the pipe needs to be long enough to ensure hydrodynamically fully developed conditions, i.e. it represents over \( \text{circa} \) 95% of the chamber length when the entrance effects become insignificant in Table 4.7, see Equations 4.3 and 4.4 [4.27, 4.28].

\[
L_c = 0.06 R_e D_h \quad \text{for} \quad R_e < 2,000 \tag{4.3}
\]

\[
L_c = 4.4 R_e^{1/6} D_h \quad \text{for} \quad R_e > 2,000 \tag{4.4}
\]

where \( L_c \) is the entrance length for a straight rectangular segment. Equations 4.3 and 4.4 can also be applied for circular straight pipes of diameter \( d \). Most pumps, heat exchangers and filters are designed to operate in optimum fully developed flow conditions at inlets and area changes to minimise streamwise wall shear stress gradients and unnecessary pressure drops [4.22, 4.24, 4.27]. Flow cell channels proposed by Dunsmore et al. (operating at 0.4 m s\(^{-1}\)) [4.29] and Stoodley et al. [4.30, 4.31] in Table 4.7 may have limited length to ensure fully developed flow conditions, therefore enhanced designs may be necessary. In contrast, the flow cell channel for the current study (Table 4.7) has been designed accordingly (more than 95% of flow cell length corresponds to fully developed flow).

### 4.6.2.3 Sherwood number

As pointed out by Pletcher and Walsh [4.27], it is usually too complex to address a detailed description of the fluid-mechanical interactions within a variety of cell geometries, types of electrodes and flow patterns. However, suitable analytical relationships exist, for instance using the Sherwood number (to measure the rate of the mass transport) in a parallel-plate cell in fully developed laminar flow [4.27]. In this instance (apart from Bayoudh et al. [4.23] for a circular pipe), this is not applicable due to the low side ratio (\( w'/b \) should be > 6 [4.27]) of flow cells in Table 4.7 as opposed to flow between infinitely wide parallel plates [4.32]. An alternative way of calculating the Sherwood number involves the use of the limiting current density for an electrode, where the corresponding potential is held at a value favouring the electrode reaction, e.g. the cathodic ORR [4.27]. In a rectangular channel electrode (i.e. flow cell with a stationary embedded electrode as for the current study), the analytical solution
between the mass transport limiting current and the flow rate is known [4.33]. Nevertheless, corroborative empirical measurements of process parameters such as mass transport inside flow cell channels are scarce, as a consequence a reliable assessment of the Sherwood number is extremely difficult [4.27]. Measurements of the mass transfer coefficient distribution as proposed by Stoodley et al. [4.31] that can provide insight into flow cell characterisation may be an exemption, see Section 2.4.4.4.

4.6.2.4 Wall shear stress and pressure drop

In piping systems, it is frequently recommended to predict the pressure drop but a true assessment of the average wall shear stress (\(\tau_w\)) is often difficult [4.22]. Nevertheless, an approximate of the \(\tau_w\) value for a rectangular cross-section in a laminar flow can be computed [4.24]:

\[
\tau_w = \frac{8\mu u}{D_h}
\]

(4.5)

Where \(\mu = 1.07 \times 10^{-3} \text{ kg m}^{-1} \text{ s}^{-1}\) is the dynamic viscosity of 35 \% seawater at 20 °C. In addition, \(D_h\) can be replaced by \(d\) in Equation 4.5 when using circular pipes. Overall, the calculated values of average wall shear stress (for a seawater environment) in Table 4.7 were consistent with, for instance, the corresponding data reported by Dunsmore et al. [4.29]. Alternatively, the relationship between major head loss and friction factor can be used to evaluate both the pressure drop and average wall shear stress. However, the exact analytical solutions for the velocity and pressure fields for laminar flow in a rectangular or circular straight pipe are well-established [4.22]. Therefore, it is not necessary to use the head loss and friction factor concept in Table 4.7. Nevertheless, the Darcy frictional resistance to fluid has been added since it is customary to include the friction factor for discussion on fluid hydrodynamics [4.22].

For a rectangular pipe in a laminar flow, \(\Delta P\) depends on \(u\) [4.22]:

\[
\Delta P = \frac{3\mu u}{b^2 F(w/b)}
\]

(4.6)
and similarly the analytical solution for the friction factor is [4.22]:

\[
f_D = \left( \frac{96}{R_e} \right) G(\frac{w'}{b})
\] (4.7)

Equation 4.7 is equivalent to Equation 4.8, which is derived from the analytical solution for a straight rectangular pipe [4.20-4.22]:

\[
f_D R_e = \frac{48(\frac{w'}{b})^{3/2}}{\left( 1 + (\frac{w'}{b}) \right) \left[ 1 - \frac{192}{\pi^5 (\frac{w'}{b})} \tanh \left( \frac{\pi}{2} (\frac{w'}{b}) \right) \right] \left( \frac{4\sqrt{A}}{W'} \right)}
\] (4.8)

where \( F(\frac{w'}{b}) \) is a function (derived expression in Equation 4.10) that depends only on the side ratio \( \frac{w'}{b} \) and \( G(\frac{w'}{b}) \) is a geometric factor defined in Equation 4.9 [4.20]:

\[
G(\frac{w'}{b}) = \frac{1}{\left( 1 + \frac{b}{w'} \right)^2 F(\frac{w'}{b})}
\] (4.9)

\[
F(\frac{w'}{b}) = \left[ \frac{2}{k_F(\frac{w'}{b})^{1/2}} \right] \left[ 1 - \frac{192}{\pi^5 (\frac{w'}{b})} \tanh \left( \frac{\pi}{2} (\frac{w'}{b}) \right) \right] \left( \frac{W'}{4\sqrt{A}} \right)
\] (4.10)

where \( k_F = \{3.00, 2.20, 2.00, 1.60, 1.25 \text{ and } 1.20\} \) for \( (\frac{w'}{b}) = \{0.5, 5/6, 1, 10/6, 4 \text{ and } 5\} \) in Table 4.8, respectively.

In addition, Table 4.8 represents the corresponding values of \( F(\frac{w'}{b}) \), \( G(\frac{w'}{b}) \) and \( f_D R_e \) for different values of \( \frac{w'}{b} \).

For a circular straight pipe in a laminar flow (e.g. Bayoudh et al. [4.23] in Table 4.7), \( \Delta P \) can be assessed using Equation 2.18 in Section 2.4.4.1. In this instance, \( f_D \) is necessary and can be obtained for laminar flow using Equation 4.11 [4.20-4.22]:

\[
f_D = \frac{64}{R_e}
\] (4.11)
An alternative relationship to determine \( \Delta P \) (for a circular straight pipe in a laminar flow, e.g. Bayoudh et al. [4.23] in Table 4.7) without the use of the friction factor can be [4.22]:

\[
\Delta P = \frac{32 \mu l' u}{d^2}
\]  

(4.12)

**Table 4.8.** Values of \( F(w'/b) \), \( G(w'/b) \) and \( f_D R_e \) as a function of the side ratio \( (w'/b) \) for a rectangular segment – * is indicative of estimated values computed using **Equations 4.7 to 4.10** and included for comparison with Table 4.7, adapted from [4.22].

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>( (w'/b) )</th>
<th>( F(w'/b) )</th>
<th>( G(w'/b) )</th>
<th>( f_D R_e = 96G(w'/b) )</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0.5*</td>
<td>0.18*</td>
<td>0.63*</td>
<td>60.23*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Thesis</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5/6*</td>
<td>0.35*</td>
<td>0.59*</td>
<td>56.75*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.42</td>
<td>0.59</td>
<td>56.91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10/6*</td>
<td>0.63*</td>
<td>0.62*</td>
<td>59.76*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>0.84</td>
<td>0.76</td>
<td>72.93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>0.87</td>
<td>0.79</td>
<td>76.28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Infinitely wide parallel plates</strong></td>
<td><strong>∞</strong></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The \( \Delta P \) values in Table 4.7 were low ranging between \( 0.25 \times 10^{-3} \) and 67.66 Pa, thus consistent with reported pressure drop values < 250 Pa in a clean flow cell operating below 0.5 m s\(^{-1}\) [4.25,4.34].

**4.6.2.5 Residence time**

The residence time (\( t_r \)) of the flow cell in **Equation 4.13** can be defined as the amount of time the medium (e.g. an ASW medium) can spend inside the flow channel [4.35].

\[
t_r = \frac{V_i}{Q}
\]  

(4.13)

where \( V_i \) is the total volume inside the flow channel.
Usually relevant to mixing flow in reactor [4.31], the residence time is, for the current investigation, informative of the time available for bacterial attachment preceding a new cycle of fresh flush solution at the inlet. Therefore, a low $t_r$ value (e.g. 64 s [4.19]) can represent a minimum time for bacterial adhesion per cycle of flush medium. However, Webb et al. [4.19] used a 1 h incubation without flow to ensure bacterial colonisation inside the flow cell. In addition, extremely low residence time values, which ranged between 0.2 and 20.0 s, are noticed in Table 4.7. Herein, batch cultures connected to flow cells are mostly employed [4.25,4.26,4.29-4.31]. For instance, a 6 h bacterial growth is used before switching to continuous culture, thus referring to $t_r$ values circa 1,560 s for the whole reactor – flow cell system (as opposed to flow cell as a stand-alone in Table 4.7) [4.30]. Additionally, Salek et al. [4.24] utilised a bacterial culture pumped through a circulating tubing network to allow bacterial colonisation for 24 h. Similar to Bayoudh et al. [4.23], a relatively long residence time of 351.6 s can correspond, for the current study, to favourable low laminar flow conditions for pioneering microbial adhesion and subsequent development (Section 2.3) within the flow channel, thereby potentially resulting in a rapid and nutrient limited stationary regime [4.36]. In particular for a laminar flow, mechanisms of Brownian motion or molecular diffusion normal to streamlines, which are more pronounced near solid or biofilm surfaces (in contrast with the streamwise direction more influenced by bulk convection) are most likely to be the dominant transport processes [4.24].

4.6.2.6 Relevance of laminar and turbulent flow

Pioneering work by Cornish suggested that the laminar flow conditions in a straight rectangular pipe using $w'/b = 2.92$ could be similar to that for a corresponding circular section. For $w'/b = 1$, the laminar flow regimes were still in good agreement (and in particular for the proposed work using a side ratio of 5/6 = 0.83), whereas a significant offset was observed for $w'/b \rightarrow \infty$ [4.32]. For a turbulent regime, there are no analytical solutions but rather an empirical Moody Chart ($f_0$ vs. $Re$) used to assess the (Darcy) frictional resistance to fluid and the corresponding pipe roughness [4.22].
4.6.3 Summary of the flow cell devices analysis

The review on flow cells (used for bacterial adhesion study) in Section 4.6.2 has outlined the limited knowledge of hydrodynamic processes from a microbiological standpoint, where engineering expertise is also necessary to develop appropriate bacteria culturing systems. Ideally, greater consensus between microbiologists and engineers should be required to commonly agree flow cell devices for bacterial biofilms. In this thesis, it was decided to design a rectangular flow cell channel of comparable dimensions to that found in the published literature with:

- minimum pressure losses and flow separation at the inlet / outlet,
- fully developed flow conditions \( i.e. L_e = 0.33 \times 10^{-3} \text{ m for a } 40.0 \times 10^{-3} \text{ m flow channel length} \), low wall shear stress \( (0.31 \times 10^{-3} \text{ Pa}) \) and pressure drop \( (1.99 \times 10^{-3} \text{ Pa}) \) for a clean rectangular flow channel, and
- a relatively long residence time of 351.6 s suitable for bacterial biofilm growth and extent.

4.6.4 Watson-Marlow peristaltic pump

A Watson-Marlow series 323S peristaltic pump (Figure 4.9) combined with small 0.63 mm bore Marprene tubes was used to generate a low flow rate, \( i.e. 5.83 \times 10^{-9} \text{ m}^3 \text{ s}^{-1} \) to minimise pulsative flow effects. This ensured a calculated \( R_e \) close to \( \approx 1 \) within the rectangular section of the flow channel consistent with a low laminar flow regime, see Table 4.7.

![Figure 4.9. Watson-Marlow series 323S peristaltic pump working principle.](image)
Although syringe pumps (more expensive) can provide continuous flow, Watson-Marlow Bredel peristaltic pumps are suitable for microbiology purposes since only the tubing is in contact with the fluid [4.37]. Consequently, this eliminates the risk of pump or fluid contamination. The liquid is drawn into the pumphead, it is then trapped between a system of rollers and a track. As the rollers move forward, liquid is expelled and a vacuum is created allowing more fluid to be drawn into the tubing (positive displacement) and so on [4.37], see Figure 4.9.

4.7 Electrochemical measurements

Cyclic voltammetry or CV at $\nu = 0.200 \text{ V s}^{-1}$ in $N_2$ deaerated 1 M $H_2SO_4$ was used to characterise the surface state of the Au electrode. CV at $\nu = 0.100 \text{ V s}^{-1}$ of the Au electrode in a 3.5 % NaCl solution was performed periodically or at 72 h under continuously air and $N_2$ sparging, aerated and deaerated conditions, respectively, to support the analysis of the cyclic voltammogram in the ASW media. Passing a stream of pure $N_2$ or Ar over the solution surface for about 30 min is often reported to be necessary to remove all residual $O_2$ [4.38,4.39]. However, a 5 – 10 min $N_2$ bubbling was sufficient for the current study to measure a detectable difference in bulk DO level, i.e. 6.90 and 0.20 ppm between the aerated and deaerated conditions (see Chapter 5). In addition, CV at $\nu = 0.100 \text{ V s}^{-1}$ was utilised to electrochemically characterise the Au electrode in the abiotic and biotic media. Overall, the scan rates used were consistent with similar studies in [4.17]. A stable CV response was generally only obtained after 3 – 5 cycles. For clarity, $E_r$ is the reduction potential of the corresponding reaction converted into potentials ($E$ vs. Ag/AgCl, 3.5 M KCl). EIS measurements for the bacterial growth study (i.e. for the 3.5 % NaCl solution, the abiotic and biotic ASW) were made over 72 h at 18 ± 1 °C in the NOC using a Ref600 Gamry Instruments potentiostat and EIS300 software at the OCP. An additional 24 h was used for the biocide inhibition investigation, i.e. using 500 nM of the NO donor SNP on a biofilmed Au surface (see Table 4.4). The applied sinusoidal potential was 10 mV$_{\text{rms}}$, with a frequency range of 0.1 to 100,000 Hz. All the electrochemical tests were performed in situ in a Faraday cage both to minimise interference due to external electromagnetic fields and light irradiance. The light irradiance (inside the Faraday cage) was measured at 0.12 ± 0.01 μmol photons m$^{-2}$ s$^{-1}$ using a Li-Cor Li-189 Photometer [4.40]. The standard procedures for the selection of EC best-fit using the Gamry Echem Analyst software version 5.30 were followed: the $\chi^2$ error was suitably low ($\chi^2 \leq 10^{-4}$), and the errors associated with each element were up to 5 %, see Section 2.6.7.
4.8 Experimental rig

Two vessels, a sealed 2 L reservoir pressurised with 0.2 µm filtered atmospheric air for test solution supply (see Section 4.4) and a waste container, were used for the experiments in Tables 4.4 and 4.5, see Figure 4.10. All the components of the whole system were sterilised. The glass vessels, Marprene tubings, Upchurch connectors made of polyetheretherketone (PEEK) were autoclaved at 120 °C. The flow cell device components (PC material, silicone rubber gasket), the polypropylene adapters for tubings were cleaned using bleach, whereas ethanol washes were used on the electrodes as an antiseptic. After cleaning, these elements were rinsed throughly with 18.2 MΩ cm Milli-Q water. The flow cell system (see Figure 4.11) was assembled under laminar flow chamber, i.e. under a particle-free and heated environment to perform microbiological or biotechnological procedures. The flush electrodes were clamped with screws embedded in the PC material. In addition, the N-008 Upchurch Scientific epoxy resin was carefully added and cured for 1 hour at 49 °C for enhanced sealing properties. Before running the experiments, attention were taken to full up the flow cell chamber with test solution by inclining the device and flushing away gas bubbles, thus minimising artefacts interfering with the useful signal of the electrochemical sensor.

Figure 4.10. Whole system for electrochemical testing under a controlled flow condition.
Figure 4.11. Modified flow cell device in sandwich configuration with an electrochemical sensor within the Faraday cage.

4.9 Confocal microscopy characterisation

Confocal microscopy (Leica TCS SP2) studies using a molecular probe technique Live / Dead\textsuperscript{(R)} BacLight\textsuperscript{TM} (from Invitrogen Ltd, Paisley, UK) were performed \textit{ex situ} using an excitation wavelength of 470 nm (see Section 2.8.1) to assess the morphology of bacterial colonies, their distribution and the presence of EPS matrix on the Au surface, and also to corroborate the performance of the electrochemical sensor.

The main components of the Leica TCS SP2 in Figure 4.12 are:

- (1) the motorised scan head,
- (2) the upright microscope stand,
- the x/y microscope stage with an additional (3) high precision z-stage,
- and (4) the anti-vibration table.
The BacLight consists in a green-fluorescent SYTO® 9 stain and a red-fluorescent propidium iodide dye [4.41] (see Section 2.8.1 for a detailed description). The procedure chosen was similar to the staining method in [4.41]. The BacLight was defrosted at room temperature and SYTO® 9 / propidium iodide stains at a ratio of 50:50 was utilised. For instance, 10 µL of SYTO® 9 was added to 10 µL of propidium iodide. Subsequently, 18 µL of the total was combined to 6 mL of 0.2 µm filtered test solution, e.g. NaCl or ASW. 0.5 mL droplets of the corresponding mixture were hence added to the Au surfaces. In between microscopy examinations, the samples were covered in tinfoil and left for 30 mins in the dark to avoid photo-bleaching. Using the Leica TCS SP2, a series of stacks of confocal images were collected at 0.5 µm intervals along the z-direction. Due to optical limitations, the resolution of raw data is always worse than the true spatial distribution of the fluorescent surface [4.42]. Consequently, subsequent deconvolutions were carried out using the Leica Confocal Software (LCS) version 2.61 resulting in a partial non-deterioration of the overall image resolution and a reconstruction of the original object structure under investigation. ImageJ was utilised for percentage coverage analyses on the Au surface images to qualitatively evaluate biofouling plus bacterial viability, i.e. Live and / or Dead bacterial cells. In this process, the biofilm stacks were projected to a view plane using the LCS version 2.61 prior to ImageJ analyses, i.e. it was representative of an underestima for

**Figure 4.12.** Leica TCS SP2 laser scanning microscope system.

[1] Confocal scan head
[2] Upright microscope stand
[3] High precision z-stage
[6] Control panel and console
[8] PC workstation
[9] Laser
the presence of a thin biofilm. In addition, numbers of attached sessile bacteria cells were computed from the percentage coverage analyses (i.e. for the biofilmed surface areas) using a relevant size criterium for one adhered *Pseudoalteromonas* sp. NCIMB 2021 cell (1.0 – 2.5 \( \mu \)m long and 0.4 – 0.6 \( \mu \)m in diameter [4.43]), see Section 5.12.6. As discussed in Section 2.8.1, suitable thresholds were applied to Leica TCS SP2 images, thus rendering biofilm cell clusters in black and the corresponding channels in white [4.31]. Additionally, biofilm thickness measurements were performed using the stacks of confocal images. Similar to [4.31], the biofilm thickness was defined as the distance between the Au surface and the peaks of the highest cell clusters. For the current study, the inter-distance between two focused images, i.e. bare and biofilmed Au surfaces was assessed using the LCS version 2.61, therefore providing biofilm thickness measurements at \( \pm 0.5 \mu \text{m} \).
Chapter 5 – Results and discussion
5.1 *Pseudoalteromonas* sp. NCIMB 2021 growth curve

Figure 5.1 shows the 72 h growth curve of the *Pseudoalteromonas* sp. NCIMB 2021. Each point (Figure 5.1) represents the mean value at a given time of a magnitude of cells number detected per mL in the non-and diluted samples (*i.e.* with values corrected from the 10 and 100 dilution factor), see Section 3.2.4.2.

![Growth curve](image)

**Figure 5.1.** Bacterial growth curve for *Pseudoalteromonas* sp. NCIMB 2021: (dashed line) cultured in the 250 mL batch culture and (solid line) established inside the flow channel.

Relative large percentage of errors shown in Figure 5.1 can be explained by the contribution of the 10 and 100 times dilution, which can greatly affect the precision of the measurement. Likewise, no useful signal was detectable after a 53 h exposure due to the presence of biological by-products in the samples, thus rendering the measurable signal not accurate (see Section 3.2.4.2). Overall, the shape of the growth curves in both the batch culture and flow cell (*i.e.* logarithmic, stationary and scenescence phase) were similar to that in Figure 3.5. Initially, the plot for the flow cell corresponds to a 2 h-old *Pseudoalteromonas* sp. NCIMB 2021 culture, therefore representative of the bacterial growth phase for the batch culture at 2 h with \(\approx 3.5 \times 10^6\) cells mL\(^{-1}\). However, the magnitude of the logarithmic growth phase was lower for the flow cell compared to that for the batch culture. This can be explained by greater
organic carbon source content substantially favouring bacterial growth in the batch culture than for the flow cell channel, see Sections 4.4 and 4.5.

In addition, the results ($\approx 1.0 \text{ to } 3.2 \times 10^8 \text{ cells mL}^{-1}$ at the plateau between 24 to 49 h) in Figure 5.1 were in agreement with that reported by Fletcher (i.e. stationary and scenscense phase reached at around 21 – 22 h and between 45 and 50 h, respectively with $\approx 2.5 \text{ to } 5.0 \times 10^9 \text{ cells mL}^{-1}$) [5.1].

From Figure 5.1, it is possible to assess $\mu_b$ defined in Section 3.2.4.2 using Equations 5.1 and 5.2 [5.2]:

$$t_d = \frac{\ln 2}{\mu_b} \quad (5.1)$$

$$n_b = \frac{\log x_t - \log x_0}{\log 2} \quad \text{for } n_b \text{ generations (i.e. } n_b t_d) \text{ between } t_0 \text{ and } t \quad (5.2)$$

where $t_d$ is the doubling time or mean generation time. It represents the average time required for all the components of the culture to double. In addition, $x_0$ and $x_t$ stand for the cell density at $t_0$ and $t$ representative of the beginning of the exponential growth and the stationary phase, respectively. Table 5.1 summarises the computations using Figure 5.1 for biological characterisation of both the batch and flow cell culturing systems in terms of mean generation time and grow rate.
Table 5.1. Calculations of biological parameters for the batch culture and flow cell system between $t_0 = 3$ h and $t = 24$ h.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Biological parameters / computations</th>
<th>Batch culture</th>
<th>Flow cell</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$\log x_0$ (at 3 h)</td>
<td>6.56</td>
<td>6.66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\log x_t$ (at 24 h)</td>
<td>8.51</td>
<td>8.06</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$x_0$ (at 3 h) / cells mL$^{-1}$</td>
<td>3,675,798</td>
<td>4,533,826</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$x_t$ (at 24 h) / cells mL$^{-1}$</td>
<td>327,223,465</td>
<td>114,092,842</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$n_b$</td>
<td>6.47 generations in 21 h</td>
<td>4.65 generations in 21 h</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\mu_b$ / h$^{-1}$</td>
<td>0.21</td>
<td>0.15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$t_d$ (i.e. 21 / $n_b$) / h</td>
<td>3.25</td>
<td>4.52</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Between 3 and 24 h (as an example for the flow cell in Table 5.1), $x_0 \approx 4,533,826$ cells mL$^{-1}$ and $x_t = 114,092,842$ cells mL$^{-1}$, there are $(8.06 - 6.66) / 0.30103 \approx 4.65$ generations in 21 h. This corresponds to $t_d = 4.52$ h, thereby $\mu_b = 0.15$ h$^{-1}$ (Table 5.1) using Equation 5.1. Likewise, the mean generation time (3.25 h) and grow rate (0.21 h$^{-1}$) values for the batch culture in Table 5.1 were within the same order of magnitude to that for the flow cell. These growth rates can be related to typical $\mu_b$ values for standard batch culturing vessels (i.e. 0.5 – 0.7 h$^{-1}$ [5.3]) or biofilm model system operating at a fast dilution rate of 0.2 h$^{-1}$ [5.2], which are usually about 10 times higher than that for typical dilution rates using a chemostat (i.e. $\approx 0.05$ h$^{-1}$) [5.2]. As a result, the $\mu_b$ value of 0.15 h$^{-1}$ is acceptable for the current study.
5.2 Summary of the bacterial growth curve characterisation

Although different environmental conditions can cause biological variability in bacterial growth (see Sections 3.2.2.2 and 4.5), results in Figure 5.1 have demonstrated that the bacterial growth curves for the flow cell and the batch culture were similar with comparable mean generation time and growth rate. Hence, using different growth media in the flow cell and batch culture (Sections 4.4 and 4.5) has a minimum influence on the outcome of the electrochemical investigation in Sections 5.10, 5.12.3, 5.12.4 and 5.13. Additionally, the growth curve characterisation of the Pseudoalteromonas strain has shown that the flow cell device is a suitable culturing system for the proposed engineering approach, i.e. allowing microbial fouling colonisation and development to occur.

5.3 Overview of the cyclic voltammograms

The cyclic voltammogram investigation performed using 1 M H$_2$SO$_4$ was made in order to characterise and establish the behaviour of the 0.2 mm diameter Au electrode in an acidic solution often used in electrochemical studies. The CV plots for NaCl solution, abiotic and biotic ASW media (Sections 5.6, 5.8 and 5.10, respectively) will be discussed in detail to provide fundamental insights into the interfacial electrochemical reactions monitored during 72 h, thus fully assessing the measurement accuracy and reliability.
5.4 Characterisation of the Au electrode in 1 M sulphuric acid

![Cyclic voltammogram for a 0.2 mm diameter Au electrode in N₂ deaerated 1 M H₂SO₄ at a scan rate of 0.200 V s⁻¹.](image)

The Au electrode CV in deaerated 1 M H₂SO₄ (Figure 5.2) is similar in behaviour to a previously reported typical Au electrode acid voltammogram [5.4,5.5]. The extended region (A) between +0.900 and +1.350 V (vs. Ag/AgCl) represents the Au oxide formation, see Equations 5.3 and 5.4.

\[
Au + 3H_2O \rightarrow Au(OH)_3 + 3H^+ + 3e^- \quad E_r = +1.245 \text{ V (vs. Ag/AgCl, 3.5 M KCl)} \quad (5.3)
\]

where the product Au(OH)_3 is the hydrated oxide,

\[
2Au + 3H_2O \rightarrow Au_2O_3 + 6H^+ + 6e^- \quad E_r = +1.305 \text{ V (vs. Ag/AgCl, 3.5 M KCl)} \quad (5.4)
\]

where the product Au_2O_3 is the anhydrous oxide.

The distribution of the anodic peaks in the region (A) along a potential range, between +0.900 and +1.350 V (vs. Ag/AgCl), can be explained by the formation of an oxide monolayer at the Au surface [5.5]. The hysteresis, i.e. the difference in the potential range between the peaks for oxide formation / reduction in regions (A) and (B), can be attributed to gradual changes in the nature of the oxide film. Dipolar (Au⁺⁺.OH⁻⁻) species are produced during the oxide growth process (during the positive potential
sweep) and cover the Au surface. The oxide coverage of the Au surface increases the overall electrostatic repulsion energy favourable for additional dipoles generation in the extended region (A).

The reduction peak in the region (B) around +0.550 V (vs. Ag/AgCl) was not well-defined. This is unusual since a conventional Au electrode acid voltammogram should ideally exhibit a relative sharp cathodic peak. This can be explained by the non-complete release (negative sweep) of lateral repulsion or stress in the surface layer of the manually polished Au electrode [5.5]. Ideally for a complete reduction of the electrostatic repulsion barrier, the post-electrochemical process of the Au oxide formation is governed by place-exchange reaction, i.e. rotation of surface dipoles resulting in the release of lateral residual stresses in the surface layer. As part of the place-exchange reaction in Figure 5.3, some Au atoms (unshaded circles) can switch positions with adsorbed O$_2$ species (shaded circles) [5.5].

Figure 5.3. Schematic representation of the place-exchange reaction in a monolayer oxide formation, from [5.5].

5.5 Summary of the CV analysis for the 1 M sulphuric acid

The electrochemical response for the 1 M sulphuric acid in Figure 5.2 was consistent with typical Au electrode acid voltammogram [5.4,5.5], i.e. Au oxide formation / reduction in regions (A) and (B), see Table 5.2.
Table 5.2. Summary of detectable electrochemical process at the Au / 1 M H₂SO₄ interface (Figure 5.2) for a potential range of 0.000 to +1.500 V (vs. Ag/AgCl).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Potentials</th>
<th>Regions</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>between +0.900 and +1.350 V (vs. Ag/AgCl)</td>
<td>(A)</td>
<td>Au oxide formation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>around +0.550 V (vs. Ag/AgCl)</td>
<td>(B)</td>
<td>reduction of the Au oxide</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5.6 CV for the NaCl solution

For clarity, only the 72 h data has been presented in Figure 5.4. Over the entire test duration, cyclic voltammograms were found to be time-independent for the NaCl test solution. The time-independent behaviour can be explained by no overall change / modification of the reaction kinetics at the Au / 3.5 % NaCl interface.

![Figure 5.4](image.png)

**Figure 5.4.** Comparison of cyclic voltammograms for a 0.2 mm diameter Au electrode in N₂ deaerated (dashed line) and aerated (solid line) 3.5 % NaCl at a scan rate of 0.100 V s⁻¹.
Overall, Figure 5.4 was in agreement with conventional cyclic voltammograms of Au in 3.5 % NaCl solution [5.4]. At positive potentials, the oxidation of Au begins around +0.750 V (vs. Ag/AgCl) in the region (A'). The presence of Cl\(^{-}\) can also influence Au dissolution, in parallel to Au oxide formation on the surface, leading to the formation of tetrachloroaurate ions (AuCl\(_4^-\)) [5.4].

\[
\text{Au} + 4\text{Cl}^- \rightarrow \text{AuCl}_4^- + 3e^- \quad \text{E}_r = +0.797 \text{ V (vs. Ag/AgCl, 3.5 M KCl)}
\]  

(5.5)

As part of the Au oxide layer formation process, the surface may be covered by Au-oxygen species, such as Au(OH), Au(OH)\(_3\) or AuO(OH) [5.4]. The associated cathodic (stripping) peak of the Au oxide formation in the region (B') around +0.550 V (vs. Ag/AgCl) is not evident in Figure 5.4. This is indicative of a process that is essentially irreversible [5.6]. Using the Pourbaix diagram for Au in chloride-water system in Figure 5.5, two possible reaction pathways can be deduced to determine the origin of the Au oxide dissolution [5.4].

*Figure 5.5. Pourbaix diagram for an Au chloride-water system at 298 K with \(a_{\text{Au}} = 10^{-3}\) and \(a_{\text{Cl}^-} = 1\) (solid line), \(a_{\text{Cl}^-} = 5\) (dashed line) where \(a_i\) is the activity of species i, adapted from [5.4].*
The first mechanism in Figure 5.6 suggests that Au can initially dissolve in the presence of Cl\(^-\) to form the AuCl\(_2^-\) complex. The AuCl\(_2^-\) stability depends on the chloride and Au activity ratios (stable at high values). With a chloride deficiency at the Au / NaCl solution interface, AuCl\(_2^-\) can undergo disproportionation to simultaneously form both Au and AuCl\(_4^-\), see Equation 5.6 [5.4].

\[
3 \text{AuCl}_2^- \rightarrow 2\text{Au} + \text{AuCl}_4^- + 2\text{Cl}^-
\]  

\[(5.6)\]

Figure 5.6. First mechanism of Au dissolution: (a) initiation of corrosion within the Au matrix and formation of the AuCl\(_2^-\) and AuCl\(_4^-\) complex (b) yielding to Au(OH)\(_3\).

The second mechanism in Figures 5.7(a) and 5.7(b) suggests that Au dissolution in a NaCl solution can proceed by the reaction of Au(OH)\(_3\) with Cl\(^-\) to form mixed chlorohydroxo Au complexes, such as AuCl(OH)\(_5^-\), see Equation 5.7 [5.4].

\[
\text{Au(OH)}_3 + \text{Cl}^- \rightarrow \text{AuCl(OH)}_5^-
\]

\[(5.7)\]
A further exchange of hydroxyl ligands of the $\text{AuCl(OH)}_3^-$ complex can occur to yield $\text{AuCl}_4^-$, see Figure 5.7(c).

Figure 5.7. Second mechanism of Au dissolution: (a) reaction of $\text{Au(OH)}_3$ with $\text{Cl}^-$ to form (b) $\text{AuCl(OH)}_3^-$ and subsequent (c) exchange of hydroxyl ligands resulting in the formation of the $\text{AuCl}_4^-$ complex.

It has been demonstrated that the ORR on Au proceeds only via an intermediary series mechanism with $\text{H}_2\text{O}_2$ as the reactant intermediate [5.4], see Section 2.4.3.2. This is often attributed to the relatively poor catalytic properties of Au for the decomposition of $\text{H}_2\text{O}_2$ compared to other noble metals (e.g. Pt). In alkaline solutions, $\text{O}_2$ is readily reduced to $\text{H}_2\text{O}_2$ (Equation 5.8) and partial peroxide reduction to water occurs on the Au surface [5.4,5.7].
O₂ + 2H₂O + 2e⁻ → H₂O₂ + 2OH⁻ \quad E_r = -0.351 \text{ V (vs. Ag/AgCl, 3.5 M KCl)} (5.8)

The region (C') in the negative potential range, between –0.200 V to the plateau at –0.700 V (vs. Ag/AgCl), shows a clear difference between the deaerated and aerated NaCl solution in Figure 5.4, thus demonstrating the occurrence of a well-defined wave of the ORR governed by Equation 5.8. The rate of the second step appears to be potential independent. This suggests that the reduction of O₂ to H₂O₂ is determined by a chemical step involving the adsorbed peroxide species [5.4].

\[
H₂O₂ → 2OH⁻ \quad (5.9)
\]

or

\[
H₂O₂ → H₂O + O' \\
O' + H₂O + e⁻ ⇌ OH⁻ + OH⁻ (5.11)
\]

Equation 5.9 or Equations 5.10 and 5.11 are followed by the fast reaction:

\[
OH⁻ + e⁻ ⇌ OH⁻ (5.12)
\]

Overall, the second step with adsorbed peroxide species, which corresponds to a second wave of ORR that is poorly defined in Figure 5.4 (solid line), can be equivalent to Equation 5.13:

\[
H₂O₂ + 2e⁻ → 2OH⁻ \quad (5.13)
\]
5.7 Summary of the CV analysis for the NaCl test condition

Overall, the electrochemical response in Figure 5.4 (Au oxide formation and stripping in the anodic region, and also ORR in the cathodic region) was in good agreement with typical voltammogram of Au in a 3.5 % NaCl test solution [5.4], see Table 5.3. Importantly, a cathodically polarised Au electrode, between −0.200 V to the plateau at −0.700 V (vs. Ag/AgCl), can be used to monitor the ORR (this is the working principle of the Clark electrode [5.8,5.9]), whereas the anodic region can be informative of potential self-cleaning / generation process of the Au surface for in service conditions [5.4,5.10-5.12].

Table 5.3. Summary of detectable electrochemical process at the Au / 3.5 % NaCl interface (Figure 5.4) for a potential range of −1.000 to +1.000 V (vs. Ag/AgCl).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Potentials</th>
<th>Regions</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>≥ +0.750 V (vs. Ag/AgCl)</td>
<td>(A')</td>
<td>Au oxide formation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>self-cleaning of the Au surface</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>around +0.550 V (vs. Ag/AgCl)</td>
<td>(B')</td>
<td>cathodic stripping of the Au oxide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>between −0.200 V to the plateau at −0.700 V (vs. Ag/AgCl)</td>
<td>(C')</td>
<td>ORR wave</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5.8 CV for the abiotic test condition

As with to the NaCl test solution in Figure 5.4, only the voltammogram for the 72 h data has been presented in Section 5.8 arising from time-independent response for the abiotic test condition (containing organic materials, see Section 4.4). This behaviour can be attributed to no overall change / modification of the reaction kinetics at the Au / abiotic ASW interface.
Figure 5.8. Comparison of cyclic voltammograms for a 0.2 mm diameter Au electrode in N₂ deaerated (dashed line) and aerated (solid line) abiotic ASW at a scan rate of 0.100 V s⁻¹.

Similarly in Figure 5.8 for the ASW medium, the regions (A') and (C') were representative of the Au oxide formation and the ORR, thus consistent with Figure 5.4. However, anodic / cathodic peaks in the domains (A'') and (B'') were apparent for the abiotic ASW at ± 0.125 V (vs. Ag/AgCl), where an oxidation wave in the region (C''), between +0.500 to +0.900 V (vs. Ag/AgCl), was more pronounced for the aerated ASW medium (Figure 5.8) as observed by Hu et al. using a similar organic medium [5.13]. A direct comparison with the NaCl solution is shown in Figure 5.9 and overall these responses were indicative of interfacial changes: adsorption / desorption process in the regions (A'') and (B'') and oxidation of organic material (favoured in aerated conditions) in the region (C''). Likewise, the regions (A') and (B') of the Au oxide formation and stripping for the abiotic ASW (less prominent to that for the NaCl solution in Figure 5.9) were shifted / suppressed due to the presence of an adsorbed organic material on the Au surface [5.14-5.16].
Figure 5.9. Comparison of cyclic voltammograms for a 0.2 mm diameter Au electrode in aerated (dashed line) 3.5% NaCl and (solid line) ASW medium at a scan rate of 0.100 V s⁻¹.

To address the nature of the electrochemical process for the abiotic ASW medium, a comparative study between a control ASW test solution (only composed of salts and metal-ions plus EDTA in Section 4.4) and abiotic ASW is presented in Figures 5.10 and 5.11. Overall, the voltammogram for the control ASW medium (Figure 5.10) was similar to that for the abiotic ASW in Figure 5.8 with the regions (A'), (C'), (A'') and (B'') representative of the Au oxide formation, the ORR and the anodic / cathodic peaks (herein for the control ASW test solution) due to electro-active adsorption / desorption of metal ions. In contrast, the wave of ORR in the region (C') was more evident for the abiotic ASW in comparison with the control ASW (Figure 5.11), thus suggesting enhanced mass transport properties when an adsorbed organic layer (conditioning film) forms on the Au surface [5.10-5.12]. Similarly, the peaks for the regions (A'') and (B'') in Figure 5.11 were depressed in the abiotic ASW, therefore explained by blocking effects of adsorbed organic material (exposed Au surface is lower) [5.14,5.15,5.17]. Whereas the oxidation wave in the region (C'') was more pronounced compared to that for the control ASW medium, as a consequence attributed to oxidation reaction of organic material and consistent with [5.13].
Figure 5.10. Comparison of cyclic voltammograms for a 0.2 mm diameter Au electrode in N₂ deaerated (dashed line) and aerated (solid line) control ASW at a scan rate of 0.100 V s⁻¹.

Figure 5.11. Comparison of cyclic voltammograms for a 0.2 mm diameter Au electrode in aerated control (dashed line) and abiotic (solid line) ASW at a scan rate of 0.100 V s⁻¹.
In addition, the anodic surface charge density \( Q_a \) in the region \((A'')\) was calculated by integrating the area under the curve between 0.080 and 0.150 V (vs. Ag/AgCl) in Figure 5.11.

\[
Q_a = \int_{t_1}^{t_2} j \, dt \tag{5.14}
\]

where \( t_1 \) and \( t_2 \) are the times representative of 0.080 and 0.150 V (vs. Ag/AgCl), respectively.

The cathodic peak in the region \((B'')\) for the abiotic ASW in Figure 5.11 was not well-defined (thus not considered for percentage surface coverage studies), herein explained by the influence of oxygen, i.e. peak shift towards the region \((C')\) of the ORR [5.14]. Table 5.4 shows the \( Q_a \) values using Equation 5.14 and the corresponding percentage surface coverage for the adsorbed organic materials.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Media</th>
<th>Control ASW</th>
<th>Abiotic ASW</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>( Q_a ) / C cm(^{-2} )</td>
<td>( 1.25 \times 10^{-2} )</td>
<td>( 3.70 \times 10^{-3} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Percentage surface coverage of adsorbed organic layers</td>
<td>( \approx 70 % )</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A percentage surface coverage of 70 % (Table 5.4) was assessed when an adsorbed organic layer can significantly suppress the electron transfer process on the Au surface [5.14, 5.15, 5.17]. Overall, this represents a limited electrochemical interpretation of the surface process occurring when a conditioning film forms on the Au surface. Consequently, corroborative tests such as AFM and spectroscopy methods on Au electrode are necessary and can be insightful on the exact nature, composition and morphology of the adsorbed organic layer [5.18].
In addition, CV for the N₂ deaerated and aerated control, and also abiotic ASW were performed at scan rates of 0.050, 0.100, 0.200 and 0.500 V s⁻¹. This allowed the study of overall electron transfer processes (see **Equation 5.15** [5.14,5.19]) using plots of the anodic and cathodic peaks current density (absolute value), \(|j_{pa}|\) and \(|j_{pc}|\) vs. \(\nu^{1/2}\), where \(j_{pa}\) and \(j_{pc}\) correspond to the magnitude of the anodic / cathodic peaks in **Figure 5.12**.

\[
j_p = (2.99 \times 10^5)z \alpha^{1/2} c D^{1/2} \nu^{1/2}
\]

where \(j_p\) is the peak current density, \(\alpha\) the transfer coefficient, \(c\) and \(D\) the concentration and the diffusion coefficient of the relevant species.

The (charging / discharging) baseline for the non-faradaic process (see the idealised plot to illustrate the curve analysis in **Figure 5.12**) shows a minimum variation between the aerated control and abiotic ASW in **Figure 5.11**, thereby suggesting that the adsorption layers (*i.e.* adsorbed organic materials) are electrochemical conductive [5.14].

**Figure 5.12.** Methodology to determine anodic and cathodic peaks current density \((j_{pa} and j_{pc})\) and peak potentials \((E_{pa} and E_{pc})\) in the voltammograms for the control and abiotic ASW media – idealised plot to illustrate the curve analysis.
For clarity, only the plots $|j_{pa}|$ and $|j_{pc}|$ vs. $\nu^{1/2}$ for the aerated conditions were presented in Figures 5.13 and 5.14 (similar trends were obtained for the N$_2$ deaerated ASW media). A linear relationship was apparent between $|j_{p}|$ and $\nu^{1/2}$ for the control ASW ($r^2 = 0.99$) in Figure 5.13 in contrast with the abiotic ASW ($r^2 = 0.93$) in Figure 5.14, where the current density values were overall about 5-fold lower to that for the control ASW, thus demonstrating the occurrence of an overall diffusion dominant process associated with the peaks ($A''$) / ($B''$) (Figure 5.11), which is depressed by surface adsorption of organic materials ($\approx 70\%$ surface coverage in Table 5.4).

Figure 5.13. Plots of $|j_{pa}|$ and $|j_{pc}|$ vs. $\nu^{1/2}$ for the aerated control ASW.
Using Figure 5.13, the ratio of $|i_{pa}|$ to $|i_{pc}|$ can be evaluated and is approximately equal to 1, thus informative of a quasi-reversible electron transfer process [5.14]. Likewise, the peak potential separation ($\Delta E_p$) in Equation 5.16 can be evaluated using CV for the aerated control ASW at scan rates of 0.050, 0.100, 0.200 and 0.500 V s$^{-1}$, see Table 5.5.

$$\Delta E_p = E_{pa} - E_{pc} = \frac{0.058}{z} \text{ V (vs. Ag/AgCl)}$$ (5.16)

where $E_{pa}$ and $E_{pc}$ are the anodic and cathodic peak potentials, see Figure 5.12.
Table 5.5. Summary of $\Delta E_p$ values for the aerated control ASW at scan rates of 0.050, 0.100, 0.200 and 0.500 V s$^{-1}$.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>$\nu$ / V s$^{-1}$</th>
<th>0.050</th>
<th>0.100</th>
<th>0.200</th>
<th>0.500</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$E_{pa}$ / V (vs. Ag/AgCl)</td>
<td>0.098</td>
<td>0.117</td>
<td>0.120</td>
<td>0.136</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$E_{pc}$ / V (vs. Ag/AgCl)</td>
<td>-0.019</td>
<td>-0.018</td>
<td>-0.030</td>
<td>-0.048</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\Delta E_p$ / V (vs. Ag/AgCl)</td>
<td>0.117</td>
<td>0.135</td>
<td>0.150</td>
<td>0.184</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The $\Delta E_p$ value (Table 5.5) is on average $\frac{0.145}{z}$ V (vs. Ag/AgCl) compared to the theoretical $\frac{0.058}{z}$ V (vs. Ag/AgCl) for a single electron transfer reaction ($z = 1$) in Equation 5.16. The difference between the experimental values (Table 5.5) and the theoretical prediction can be ascribed to the presence of EDTA amide ligands bound to the Au surface, thus forming coordinated metal ion complexes with an additional solution resistance [5.14,5.20].

![Chemical structure of EDTA](image)

**Figure 5.15.** Chemical composition of EDTA.

This single electron transfer process (Table 5.5) can correspond to the ferric-EDTA complex (see reduction reaction in Equation 5.17) [5.20,5.21], where the concentration of FeCl$_3$ is similar to that for EDTA in Table 4.3.
Fe$^{3+}$ EDTA + e$^-$ → Fe$^{2+}$ EDTA  $E_r = -0.085$ V (vs. Ag/AgCl, 3.5 M KCl)  

(5.17)

The anodic and cathodic transfer coefficients ($\alpha_a$ and $\alpha_c$) can be determined (Equation 5.18 [5.14,5.19]) utilising the relationships $E_{pa}$ and $E_{pc}$ vs. In $\nu$ for the aerated control ASW in Figure 5.16.

$$E_p = E_0' + \frac{RT}{\alpha F} \left[ 0.780 + \ln \left( \frac{D^{1/2}}{k^0} \right) + \ln \left( \frac{\alpha F \nu}{RT} \right)^{1/2} \right] \quad (5.18)$$

where $E_p$ is the peak potential, $E_0'$ is the formal potential of the electrode and $k^0$ the standard heterogeneous rate constant. Figure 5.16 shows $E_{pa}$ and $E_{pc}$ vs. In $\nu$, where using Equation 5.18 the slopes for $E_{pa}$ and $E_{pc}$ equal $\frac{RT}{2\alpha_a F}$ and $-\frac{RT}{2\alpha_c F}$, respectively.

Figure 5.16. Plots of $E_{pa}$ and $E_{pc}$ vs. In $\nu$ for the aerated control ASW.
The transfer coefficient values can be deduced utilising Figure 5.16, where $\alpha_a \approx 0.82$ and $\alpha_c \approx 0.79$ (Table 5.6), thus showing symmetrical values informative of a quasi-reversible process (ideally $\alpha_a + \alpha_c = 1$ for a reversible process) [5.14].

**Table 5.6.** Summary of the transfer coefficient values for the aerated control ASW using Figure 5.16.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>$R / J K^{-1} \text{mol}^{-1}$</th>
<th>8.3144</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$T / K$, see Table 4.5</td>
<td>291.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$F / C \text{mol}^{-1}$</td>
<td>96,485</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slope for $E_{pa}$ vs. $\ln \nu / V$</td>
<td>0.015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\alpha_a$ / dimensionless</td>
<td>0.82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slope for $E_{pc}$ vs. $\ln \nu / V$</td>
<td>-0.016</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\alpha_c$ / dimensionless</td>
<td>0.79</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Quantitative analyses using Equation 5.15 would imply that corresponding $j_p$ values are within the order of magnitude of $2.0 \times 10^{-4} \text{ A cm}^{-2}$ for $c = 1.0 \times 10^{-6} \text{ mol cm}^{-3}$ (i.e. $1.0 \times 10^{-3} \text{ mol L}^{-1}$) [5.14]. This is about $10^3$-fold higher to the concentration of FeCl$_3$ and EDTA in Table 4.3, thus Equation 5.15 is not applicable for this concentration in order to determine accurately the diffusion coefficient of the ferric-EDTA complex.

5.9 Summary of the CV analysis for the abiotic test condition

Overall, the performance of the sensor in the abiotic ASW medium was in agreement with typical electrochemical characteristics of a Au electrode in an abiotic seawater environment [5.4]. The analysis for the abiotic ASW medium was supported by a comparative study with a conventional behaviour of a Au electrode in 3.5 % NaCl and with the electrochemical response in a control ASW test solution (only consisting of metal-ions and salts, and also EDTA in Section 4.4).
Table 5.7. Summary of detectable electrochemical process at the Au / abiotic ASW interface (Figure 5.8) for a potential range of −1.000 to +1.000 V (vs. Ag/AgCl).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Potentials</th>
<th>Regions</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>≥ +0.750 V (vs. Ag/AgCl)</td>
<td>(A')</td>
<td>Au oxide formation self-cleaning of the Au surface around +0.550 V (vs. Ag/AgCl)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>between −0.200 V to the plateau at −0.700 V (vs. Ag/AgCl)</td>
<td>(C')</td>
<td>ORR wave</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>± 0.125 V (vs. Ag/AgCl)</td>
<td>(A'') / (B'')</td>
<td>electro-active adsorption / desorption of metal-ions suppressed by blocking organic material</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>between +0.500 to +0.900 V (vs. Ag/AgCl)</td>
<td>(C'')</td>
<td>oxidation wave for organic material oxidation reaction</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Importantly, and as well as similar to the NaCl test solution, an electrode polarised in the cathodic region between −0.200 V to the plateau at −0.700 V (vs. Ag/AgCl), can detect the baseline ORR in a marine environment (Clark electrode) [5.4]. The oxidation reaction of organic material, corresponding to the wave between +0.500 to +0.900 V (vs. Ag/AgCl), can suppress the surface oxidation process beginning around +0.750 V (vs. Ag/AgCl) both in the NaCl test solution and control ASW medium [5.14-5.16]. This suggests that higher potentials may be required for the self-cleaning of the Au electrode immersed in seawater enriched with organic material. Likewise, it was demonstrated that metal-ions from the bulk ASW medium can diffuse and subsequently electro-actively adsorb / desorb on the Au surface, i.e. in the regions (A'') and (B'') at ± 0.125 V (vs. Ag/AgCl), and also overall this diffusion dominant process was depressed by the presence of blocking organic material (in the abiotic ASW) adsorbed / desorbed on the Au surface, which in turn represents about 70 % percentage surface coverage. Although Section 5.8 has outlined limited quantitative evaluation of the diffusion process in the region (A'') and (B''), it was shown that the electrochemical reaction involved was a quasi-reversible ($\alpha_a \approx 0.82$ and $\alpha_c \approx 0.79$) and single electron process ($z = 1$) consistent with the redox couple $\text{Fe}^{3+} \text{EDTA} / \text{Fe}^{2+} \text{EDTA}$. Overall, this will have negligible influence on the interfacial response for the biotic test condition in Section 5.10. In contrast with surface modification treatment, this clearly shows that a
conditioning film on the Au surface is not representative of an impermeable and controllable coating but can consist of a monolayer with defects / pinholes facilitating charge diffusion process in analogy with self-assembled monolayers on Au microelectrodes [5.14,5.15,5.22].

5.10 CV for the biotic test condition

In contrast with the abiotic ASW, the electrochemical response for the biotic test condition (Figure 5.17) was time-dependent and showed of detectable modification of the reaction kinetics at the Au / biotic ASW interface after a 72 h immersion.

![Comparison of cyclic voltammograms for a 0.2 mm diameter Au electrode in aerated (dashed line) abiotic and (solid line) biotic ASW medium after a 72 h immersion at a scan rate of 0.100 V s⁻¹.](image)

Overall, the electrochemical characteristics obtained over 72 h in the biotic ASW medium (Figure 5.17) were more complex compared to the abiotic condition (Figure 5.8), thus consistent with [5.13,5.23]. As in the abiotic ASW medium, the domain (A') represents the onset of the Au oxide formation, where the corresponding cathodic peak in the region (B') was suppressed, thus indicative of an irreversible process [5.6]. Interestingly, the region (C') of the ORR was more pronounced for the biotic in comparison with the abiotic condition. This is representative of an increase of the current density (absolute value) in the presence of *Pseudoalteromonas* bacteria. This phenomenon can be explained by an enhancement of the ORR kinetics due to
enzymatic activities, thus consistent with [5.24-5.27] where specific enzymes (e.g., catalase) that are present in the EPS matrix could be responsible for an increase in cathodic currents. \( \text{H}_2\text{O}_2 \) in Equation 5.8 (Section 5.6) can be decomposed by enzymatic processes to \( \text{H}_2\text{O} \) and \( \text{O}_2 \) (Section 2.4.3.2), see Equation 5.19. A higher concentration of reactants (\( i.e. \) \( \text{O}_2 \) species) is readily available at the cathode, therefore increasing the kinetics of the overall ORR.

\[
2\text{H}_2\text{O}_2 \rightarrow 2\text{H}_2\text{O} + \text{O}_2 \tag{5.19}
\]

Conversely, the regions \( (A'') \) and \( (B'') \) corresponding to the electro-active adsorption / desorption of metal ions were completely suppressed as compared with the abiotic condition, thus explained by the inability of metal-ions to diffuse across the biofilm to the Au surface. This is in good agreement with the characteristics of aerobic bacteria to change the electrochemical properties of metallic surfaces [5.24,5.28]. In addition, a wave in the region \( (C'') \) was observed between about +0.300 to +0.800 V (vs. Ag/AgCl). This wave can be explained by anodic reaction mechanisms of electro-active \emph{Pseudoalteromonas} biofilms [5.29-5.31] and was consistent with similar reports using adhered biofilms on a Au surface [5.13,5.23].

Although the exact pathway of interfacial charge transfer supported by bacterial cells remains to be clarified (see Section 2.4.3.2), it has been proposed that bacteria within electro-active biofilms can directly exchange electrons with a conductive material without a mediator [5.29,5.30,5.32-5.34]. One possible explanation is presented in analogy with the concept of mediator-less MFC or biological fuel cell, \( i.e. \) a system where electrochemically active bacteria can transfer electrons directly from the bacterial respiratory enzyme to the electrode [5.29,5.30,5.32-5.34]. When bacterial biofilms develop on the conditioning film, a gradient of DO level is generated (differential aeration cell), thus resulting in the formation of micro-galvanic anode and cathode on the electrode, see Figure 2.19(c)/(ii) in Section 2.6.5.3. At the anodic site where \( \text{O}_2 \) is deficient, bacteria can oxidise organic material and produce \( \text{CO}_2 \) plus \( \text{H}_2\text{O} \) [5.33]. The oxidation reaction at the anode via respiratory enzymes generates electrons collected at the cathodic site where \( \text{O}_2 \) is prominent. In this process, bacteria can assist in the transfer of electrons, where the most active cells can be found at the biofilm / seawater interface [5.27]. Overall, the enzymatic enhanced ORR via catalase enzymes (Figure 5.18) is the prevailing reaction at the cathode.
5.11 Summary of electrochemical performance within abiotic and biotic ASW test media

Overall, the cyclic voltammograms between the abiotic and biotic ASW media demonstrated that bacterial biofilms can change the electrochemical properties at the interface, i.e. suppression of regions (B'), (A'') and (B'') and enhance the overall ORR, and also the oxidation reaction of organic material, see Table 5.8. Herein, the results were consistent with [5.13,5.24,5.25]. By polarising in the negative direction, i.e. the cathodic domain (C'), the overall and enhanced ORR due to enzymatic processes can be assessed. The working principle of commercialised electrochemical sensors for biofilm sensing, such as the BIoGEORGE and BioX (Section 2.6.4.2) relies on similar electrical polarisation method [5.35-5.40]. With the depression of the Au oxide stripping (Table 5.8), the self-cleaning of the biofilmed Au is debatable for a potential range of −1.000 to +1.000 V (vs. Ag/AgCl), where higher potentials to that for the NaCl test solution and ASW medium may be necessary. However, the essence of this scientific work is to sense for biofilms without imposing an electrical polarisation, which has been proven to influence biofilms [5.41] (Section 2.6.6). Consequently, the EIS at the OCP values has been chosen (see Section 5.12).
Table 5.8. Summary of detectable electrochemical process at the Au / biotic ASW interface (Figure 5.17) for a potential range of –1.000 to +1.000 V (vs. Ag/AgCl).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Potentials</th>
<th>Regions</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>≥ +0.750 V (vs. Ag/AgCl)</td>
<td>(A')</td>
<td>Au oxide formation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>around +0.550 V (vs. Ag/AgCl)</td>
<td>(B')</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>between –0.200 V to the plateau at –0.700 V (vs. Ag/AgCl)</td>
<td>(C')</td>
<td>enzymatic enhanced ORR wave</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>± 0.125 V (vs. Ag/AgCl)</td>
<td>(A'') / (B'')</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>between +0.500 to +0.900 V (vs. Ag/AgCl)</td>
<td>(C'')</td>
<td>enzymatic enhanced oxidation wave for organic material oxidation reaction</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5.12 Qualitative analysis of the EIS data / confocal microscopy

The EIS data were presented in three forms: the Bode |Z| (|impedance| vs. frequency) plots, the Bode –θ (the –phase vs. frequency) plots and the Nyquist (the –imaginary part vs. real components of the complex impedance) diagrams. The impedance data for the NaCl test solution in Figures 5.19 to 5.21 represent the electrochemical behaviour of the Au electrode in a neutral – alkaline solution, pH 8.0 [5.42]. This has allowed establishing a framework of electrochemical characterisation for the abiotic test condition (Figures 5.25 to 5.27) to be used for a comparative study between the abiotic and biotic media (Figures 5.30 to 5.32) in order to evaluate the sensor performance. Importantly, the EIS response of the 500 nM NO donor SNP on a 72-h old biofilm Au electrode is uniquely presented in Figures 5.36 to 5.38 to assess the overall effectiveness of the natural biocide (continuous dosing) over a 24 h duration. In addition, a fine evaluation of the capacitive parameters for the NaCl test solution, the abiotic and biotic media, and also the 500 nM SNP in ASW is addressed in Section 5.13.
5.12.1 EIS analysis of the NaCl test condition

Figure 5.19. Bode (|Z| vs. f) plots at OCP for a 0.2 mm diameter Au electrode in the 3.5 % NaCl solution – OCP values: +0.090, –0.070, –0.215 and –0.225 V (vs. Ag/AgCl) after a 0, 4, 21 and 72 h immersion, respectively.

Figure 5.20. Bode (–θ vs. f) plots at OCP for a 0.2 mm diameter Au electrode in the 3.5 % NaCl solution – OCP values: +0.090, –0.070, –0.215 and –0.225 V (vs. Ag/AgCl) after a 0, 4, 21 and 72 h immersion, respectively.
Figure 5.21. Nyquist diagrams at OCP for a 0.2 mm diameter Au electrode in the 3.5 % NaCl solution – OCP values: +0.090, –0.070, –0.215 and –0.225 V (vs. Ag/AgCl) after a 0, 4, 21 and 72 h immersion, respectively.

Overall, the EIS response in Figure 5.19 was relatively uniform over time with two distinct regions. At higher frequencies, between 10 to 100,000 Hz, a linear relationship is apparent between the interfacial impedance modulus $|Z|$ and frequency with a slope close to $-1$ (see Section 5.13 for a fine assessment of the capacitive characteristics for the NaCl test solution), which corresponds to a plateau of the phase angle close to $-90$ degrees in Figure 5.20 and partially resolved Nyquist plot semicircles in Figure 5.21. This is indicative of a predominantly capacitance behaviour and is consistent with a previous study using a similar experimental sterile configuration [5.42] and with the well-established double-layer concept (i.e. interfacial charge distribution) [5.43]. In this frequency region, the plots are perfectly overlapped, thus indicating good reproducibility of the EIS performance. At lower frequencies, between 0.1 to 10 Hz, an additional resistance / diffusive response (Figure 5.19) can be seen with negligible impedance changes over a 72 h immersion, thus demonstrating the absence of detectable modification of the interfacial charge transfer with time. The diffusive behaviour (Figure 5.19) is associated with linear features having a slope close to 45 degrees (representative of a Warburg impedance response, $W$) over the 72 h in Figure 5.21. This impedance characteristic can result from diffusion of the electro-active DO to the Au surface to participate in the ORR [5.42]. In a deaerated 3.5 % NaCl solution (see the idealised plot to illustrate the curve analysis in Figure 5.22), the
EIS response would be similar to a perfect capacitive behaviour without the low frequency resistive / diffusive characteristic [5.42].

Figure 5.22. Qualitative (a) Bode (|Z| vs. f) and (b) Nyquist plots for a Au micro-electrode in N$_2$ (dashed line) and air (solid line) saturated, 3.5 % NaCl solution – idealised plot to illustrate the curve analysis, adapted from [5.42].

Figure 5.23 shows the confocal microscopy analyses of a Au electrode after a 72 h immersion in NaCl.
The presence of a few isolated spots in Figure 5.23 is indicative of a minimum fouling on the Au surface in the NaCl. A control test with no BacLight is necessary to fully address the nature of the fluorescent background signal (Figure 5.23). After discussions with Dr Stoodley (nCATS), it is usually attributed to processes of nonspecific binding (where the stains are binding to receptors not of interest in order to achieve a more favourable chemical configuration) [5.44].
Overall, the prevailing processes in NaCl can be explained by DO from the bulk solution diffusing across the double layer to be reduced at the Au surface via the ORR, see Figure 5.24.

**Figure 5.24.** ORR mechanisms at the Au / NaCl interface – typical thickness of the double layer ≈ 0.5 nm [5.8].

### 5.12.2 EIS analysis of the abiotic test condition

**Figure 5.25.** Bode (|Z| vs. f) plots at OCP for a 0.2 mm diameter Au electrode in the abiotic ASW medium – OCP values: +0.085, −0.070, −0.250 and −0.325 V (vs. Ag/AgCl) after 0, 4, 21 and 72 h immersion, respectively.
Figure 5.26. Bode ($-\theta$ vs. $f$) plots at OCP for a 0.2 mm diameter Au electrode in the abiotic ASW medium – OCP values: +0.085, −0.070, −0.250 and −0.325 V (vs. Ag/AgCl) after a 0, 4, 21 and 72 h immersion, respectively.

Figure 5.27. Nyquist diagrams at OCP for a 0.2 mm diameter Au electrode in the abiotic ASW medium – OCP values: +0.085, −0.070, −0.250 and −0.325 V (vs. Ag/AgCl) after a 0, 4, 21 and 72 h immersion, respectively.
Overall, the EIS response in the abiotic ASW medium (Figures 5.25 and 5.26) tends to shift with time towards lower frequencies. This behaviour is often associated with interfacial adsorption dominant processes [5.45,5.46]. In the high frequency part of the spectra, 100 to 100,000 Hz (Figure 5.25), a slope close to –1 (see Section 5.13 for a fine study of the capacitive behaviour for the abiotic ASW) is evident corresponding to a plateau of the phase angle relatively close to –90 degrees in Figure 5.26 and to partially resolved Nyquist semicircles in Figure 5.27. This can be explained by a capacitance characteristic associated with a conditioning film due to the rapid formation of an adsorbed layer of organic material (i.e. a conditioning film) on the Au surface [5.36,5.47,5.48]. In the low frequency part of the spectra, 0.1 to 100 Hz, a clear diffusive response can be seen in Figure 5.25. This coincides with the presence of a delineated linear feature having a slope of 45 degrees in Figure 5.27, which is characteristic of diffusion of dissolved species, such as electro-active DO to the Au surface.
Figure 5.28 represents the confocal microscopy analyses of a Au electrode after a 72 h immersion in abiotic ASW. Similar to the NaCl solution in Figure 5.23, the presence of faint coloured spots (Figure 5.28) is representative of minimum fouling and may be explained by non-specific binding [5.44].

Figure 5.28. Confocal microscopy of a Au electrode stained with the BacLight™ viability kit after a 72 h immersion in abiotic ASW: (a) Live, (b) Dead and (c) Live / Dead – corresponding binary (black and white) images in (a’), (b’) and (c’) using ImageJ software.
Overall, the mechanistic model in the ASW (Figure 5.29) is the diffusion of DO from the bulk across the conditioning layer to be reduced at the Au surface via the ORR.

Figure 5.29. ORR mechanisms at the Au / ASW interface for (a) a homogeneous and (b) a heterogeneous adsorbed organic layer – typical thickness of the conditioning film $\approx 6 - 10$ nm $^{[5.35,5.36,5.49]}$.

Herein, it is clear that the EIS response (at the Au / 3.5 % NaCl or abiotic ASW interface) was independent of time, i.e. there was no significant impedance change during the 72 h test. Thus, the results for the 3.5 % NaCl and abiotic ASW test solutions established that no detectable modification of the electron transfer or cathodic reduction reaction occurred.
5.12.3 EIS analysis of the biotic test condition

Figure 5.30. Bode (|Z| vs. f) plots for a 0.2 mm diameter Au electrode in the biotic ASW medium (abiotic: −1 h before inoculation) – OCP values: +0.090, +0.085, −0.075, −0.460 and −0.560 V (vs. Ag/AgCl) at −1 h (abiotic) and after a 0, 4, 21 and 72 h immersion, respectively.

Figure 5.31. Bode (−θ vs. f) plots for a 0.2 mm diameter Au electrode in the biotic ASW medium (abiotic: −1 h before inoculation) – OCP values: +0.090, +0.085, −0.075, −0.460 and −0.560 V (vs. Ag/AgCl) at −1 h (abiotic) and after a 0, 4, 21 and 72 h immersion, respectively.
Figure 5.32. Nyquist diagrams for a 0.2 mm diameter Au electrode in the biotic ASW medium (abiotic: −1 h before inoculation) – OCP values: +0.090, +0.085, −0.075, −0.460 and −0.560 V (vs. Ag/AgCl) at −1 h (abiotic) and after a 0, 4, 21 and 72 h immersion, respectively.

In contrast to the abiotic ASW in Section 5.12.2, the EIS data show a more complex impedance response for the biotic ASW medium. Initially similar at −1 h to the abiotic condition, after inoculation (0 h) the capacitive region was clearly extended deeper into the low frequency part of the spectra (Figures 5.30 and 5.31) with an overall increase in the diameter of the resolved Nyquist semicircles observed in Figure 5.32. This is indicative of a greater influence of adsorption processes [5.45,5.46], associated with the adhesion of the pioneering bacteria on a conditioning film [5.50,5.51], thus consistent with [5.52]. At lower frequencies, 0.1 to 100 Hz (Figure 5.30), a diffusive behaviour with a subtle change in impedance over 72 h was observed compared to the abiotic condition. This coincides with a decrease of the depressed Nyquist semicircles with a tail having a slope close to 45 degrees, see Figure 5.32. It can probably be explained by an enhancement of the ORR by enzymatic processes via similar mechanisms presented in Figure 2.19(c)(ii) in Section 2.6.5.3, thus consistent with similar work using the same strain on 70 / 30 Cu-Ni alloys (although the corrosion products and oxide film formation also influenced the EIS response) [5.53].
**Figure 5.33** shows the confocal microscopy analyses of a Au electrode after a 72 h immersion in biotic ASW. The bacterial clusters or patchy slime are clearly seen ([Figure 5.33](#)), thus corroborating the presence of bacterial biofilms established under low laminar flow conditions [5.36] (as opposed to filamentous / streamlined biofilms observed in turbulent flow regime [5.54]) and the EIS response for the biotic ASW medium in Figures 5.30 to 5.32. Using the LCS version 2.61, a biofilm thickness of 3.0 ± 0.5 µm was measured ([Figure 5.34](#)), consistent with the occurrence of a thin physical diffusion barrier [5.55,5.56], which has been reported to be 4 – 8 µm thick on a Au surface after a 10 days exposure in seawater [5.7].
Figure 5.33. Confocal microscopy of a Au electrode stained with the BacLight\textsuperscript{TM} viability kit after a 72 h immersion in biotic ASW: (a) Live, (b) Dead and (c) Live / Dead – corresponding binary (black and white) images in (a'), (b') and (c') using ImageJ software.
Figure 5.34. (a) Confocal microscopy of a 72 h-old biofilmed Au electrode stained with the BacLight™ viability kit and (b) the corresponding cross section.

In agreement with the EIS data, this confirms that bacterial biofilm formation and its extent is a dynamic and complex process [5.47]. Initially, pioneering bacteria will settle on the conditioning film formed on the Au surface. Subsequent bacterial growth, colonisation and EPS secretion will follow the initial bacterial adhesion using available nutrients within the EPS and bulk solution. Similarly, enzymes (e.g. catalase in Section 2.4.3.2) will be produced to assist in the ORR enhancement, see Figure 5.35.
Figure 5.35. ORR enhancement mechanisms for the biotic condition – typical thickness of the bacterial biofilm ≈ a few microns [5.7, 5.24, 5.35, 5.36].

5.12.4 EIS analysis of the NO donor SNP

Figure 5.36. Bode (|Z| vs. f) plots for a 0.2 mm diameter Au electrode with 500 nM NO donor SNP in ASW medium for 24 h (abiotic: −1 h before inoculation and biotic growth for 72 h) – OCP values: +0.080, −0.470, −0.470, −0.470 and −0.325 V (vs. Ag/AgCl) at −1 h (abiotic) and 72 h (biotic) after a 0, 1 and 24 h treatment with SNP, respectively.
Figure 5.37. Bode (−θ vs. f) plots for a 0.2 mm diameter Au electrode with 500 nM NO donor SNP in ASW medium for 24 h (abiotic: −1 h before inoculation and biotic growth for 72 h) – OCP values: +0.080, −0.470, −0.470, −0.470 and −0.325 V (vs. Ag/AgCl) at −1 h (abiotic) and 72 h (biotic) after a 0, 1 and 24 h treatment with SNP, respectively.

Figure 5.38. Nyquist diagrams for a 0.2 mm diameter Au electrode with 500 nM NO donor SNP in ASW medium for 24 h (abiotic: −1 h before inoculation and biotic growth for 72 h) – OCP values: +0.080, −0.470, −0.470, −0.470 and −0.325 V (vs. Ag/AgCl) at −1 h (abiotic) and 72 h (biotic) after a 0, 1 and 24 h treatment with SNP, respectively.
Overall, the EIS response in the abiotic and biotic conditions (Figures 5.36 to 5.38) was qualitatively comparable with the electrochemical performances in Figures 5.30 to 5.32. These include the impedance shift towards lower frequencies (Figures 5.36 and 5.37), the diffusive / resistive behaviour and the subtle change in impedance (Figure 5.36) in the low frequency part of the spectra, 0.1 to 100 Hz. Initially at 0 h, after addition of SNP on the 72h old biofilmed Au surface, no marked change in impedance was observed. Importantly, a detectable modification of the EIS response (increase in the interfacial resistance at lower frequencies) was evident after prolonged exposure. This can be explained by a significant suppression of the interfacial charge transfer resulting from stress induced by NO on the bacterial biofilms [5.57,5.58]. Although the exact dispersal mechanism of NO action remains to be elucidated [5.57,5.59] (herein further electrochemical are required to understand the exact nature of the interfacial process involved), the detectable increase in impedance can presumably be associated with biofilm sloughing. Likewise, subtle interfacial charge transfer (smaller depressed Nyquist semi-circle after 1 h of exposure to that for 0 h) in Figure 5.38 can account for residual ORR via enzymatic processes. In this overall process, it is possible that adsorbed NO and O$_2$ compete on electro-active sites, thereby affecting the Au interface [5.60].

The confocal microscopy in Figure 5.39 has enabled, for the first time, an assessment of the performance of a 500 nM of the NO donor SNP on a 72 h-old Pseudoalteromonas biofilmed Au surface. Conversely, the presence of bacterial clusters in Figure 5.39 has been greatly reduced on the Au electrode. This clearly demonstrates, in agreement with the NO biofilm dispersal approach at Southampton in Section 2.9, that continuous exposure to low, non-toxic concentrations of NO donor SNP; in the nanomolar range (500 nM) [5.57,5.58], can induce effective and efficient dispersal in marine bacterial biofilms. These results are consistent with [5.57] where greatest antifouling effects (decrease in biofilm biomass and an increase in planktonic biomass) were observed with 500 nM of the NO donor SNP.
Figure 5.39. Confocal microscopy of a Au 72 h-old biofilm electrode stained with the BacLight\textsuperscript{TM} viability kit after a 24 h immersion using 500 nM of the NO donor SNP: (a) Live, (b) Dead and (c) Live / Dead – corresponding binary (black and white) images in (a'), (b') and (c') using ImageJ software.
In that process, small molecules of NO will diffuse across the interface and induce biological stresses, causing potential damages to DNA, lipids and proteins of bacterial cells [5.57,5.58]. This can occur when the production of NO overwhelms the capacity of cells to remove the reactive nitrogen intermediates, i.e. the NO molecules [5.57,5.58]. This leads to biofilm dispersal from the Au surface at low, non-toxic concentrations of NO donor SNP, see Figure 5.40.

Figure 5.40. Detachment mechanism induced by NO on a biofilmed Au surface: (1) diffusion of NO molecule across the interface and (2) subsequent biofilm dispersal – typical thickness of the bacterial biofilm ≈ a few microns [5.7,5.24,5.35,5.36].

5.12.5 Surface percentage coverage

A comparative study (percentage coverage) of the fouling performances of the Au surface in NaCl, abiotic and biotic ASW, and also biotic ASW with SNP is addressed in Figure 5.41. Whereas the fouling properties in NaCl and abiotic ASW are negligible (close to a few percent), a significant biofilm coverage has accumulated on the Au surface in biotic ASW. Overall, the histograms for the biotic conditions show that the biofilm is composed of live (≈ 55 %) and dead (≈ 50 %) cells. This can be explained by the lifespan (≈ 72 h) of the Pseudoalteromonas strain [5.1] with the occurrence of growing and aging cells forming the biofilm [5.61]. After exposure to SNP, a marked decrease of biofouling from about 50 % to 5 % was observed.
5.12.6 Estimation of the number of sessile bacterial cells

Numbers of attached bacterial cells for the biotic ASW (72 h-old biofilm in Figure 5.33) and 500 nM SNP in ASW (24 h exposure to NO donor SNP in Figure 5.39) are presented in Table 5.9. Results in Table 5.9 have been outlined assuming the occurrence of a monolayer of bacterial cells on the Au surfaces (with cells in direct contact to the surface likely to influence the electrochemistry, see Section 2.4.3.2), where the exact distribution of cells is non-uniform along the z-direction (different biofilm layer stacks), see Section 2.7.1.
Table 5.9. Numbers of attached bacterial cells for the biotic ASW (72 h-old biofilmed Au surface) and 500 nM SNP in ASW (24 h exposure).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Number of sessile bacterial cells / Au electrode</th>
<th>Number of sessile bacterial cells / cells cm(^{-2})</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Estimation of sessile bacterial cells assuming complete surface coverage</strong></td>
<td>49,740 ± 28,800</td>
<td>1.6 ± 0.9 \times 10^8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Biotic ASW (Figure 5.41)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Live</td>
<td>28,100 ± 1,990</td>
<td>8.9 ± 0.6 \times 10^7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dead</td>
<td>24,175 ± 2,485</td>
<td>7.7 ± 0.8 \times 10^7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Live / Dead</td>
<td>25,765 ± 1,740</td>
<td>8.2 ± 0.5 \times 10^7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mean value</td>
<td>26,015 ± 2,485</td>
<td>8.3 ± 0.8 \times 10^7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>500 nM SNP in ASW (Figure 5.41)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Live</td>
<td>3,210 ± 150</td>
<td>10.2 ± 0.5 \times 10^6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dead</td>
<td>2,510 ± 150</td>
<td>8.0 ± 0.5 \times 10^6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Live / Dead</td>
<td>3,035 ± 250</td>
<td>9.6 ± 0.8 \times 10^6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mean value</td>
<td>2,920 ± 250</td>
<td>9.3 ± 0.8 \times 10^6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The standard deviation in Table 5.9 can be explained by different contact surface areas for the sessile bacterial cells, where bacteria in Figure 5.42(a)(i) / Figure 5.42(b)(i) will undergo greater interfacial mechanisms to those in Figure 5.42(a)(ii) / Figure 5.42(b)(ii).

Figure 5.42. (a) Plan view of sessile bacterial cells on a Au matrix and (b) the corresponding cross section.
An estimation of 26,015 ± 2,485 bacterial cells for the mean value (corresponding to 8.3 ± 0.8 × 10^7 cells cm\(^{-2}\)) was assessed on the 72 h-old biofilmed Au surface, whereas 2,920 ± 250 adhered bacterial cells (representative of 9.3 ± 0.8 × 10^6 cells cm\(^{-2}\)) remained on the Au surface, thus showing approximately a 10-fold decrease of overall biofouling after treatment with 500 nM of the NO donor SNP. Although the methodology used in Table 5.9 to quantify numbers of adhered bacteria is limited (it assumes that black features in Figures 5.33 and 5.39 are biofilm cell clusters, see Section 4.9), it represents relevant quantifiable data to support the quantitative analysis of the EIS measurements (see Section 5.13).

5.12.7 OCP values of the EIS data

Figure 5.43 shows the variation of the OCP values of the EIS data over 72 h for the 3.5 % NaCl solution, the abiotic and biotic media. Overall, the OCP values shifted towards the cathodic region of the ORR, between about +0.100 and –0.225 V (vs. Ag/AgCl) for the NaCl test solution, and –0.325 V (vs. Ag/AgCl) for the abiotic ASW, and also –0.550 V (vs. Ag/AgCl) for the biotic ASW. Whereas the OCP values (for the NaCl test solution and abiotic ASW) gradually stabilise over the first few 4 – 8 h, those for the biotic conditions exhibit more pronounced variation towards higher negative potentials. This can be explained by the development of an interfacial charge distribution to achieve a stable state [5.46], i.e. double layer for the NaCl solution [5.43] where Cl\(^-\) ions can negatively charge the Au surface and potentially yield chloro complexes (under low flowing conditions in Section 4.6, thus affecting the Au interface) [5.63], and electrode polarisation due to the presence of adsorbed organic material (the conditioning film) associated with an overall change in the adsorbed species and the kinetics of the ORR for the abiotic ASW [5.59,5.64]. For the biotic ASW, it can be attributed to a natural polarisation process of the Au surface due to the biofilm formation and is consistent with [5.27,5.31]. In particular, the slow negative shift in Figure 5.43 reflects an increased surface heterogeneity in the presence of an adsorption film or biofilm (for the abiotic and biotic ASW), thereby the surface active area decreases and can subsequently influence the ORR [5.14]. Similarly, the exact interfacial mechanism may be more complex with the potential influence of the catalase to the shift of the OCP values towards the cathodic region [5.65,5.66]. After addition of the NO donor SNP in the biotic condition, an increase of the OCP value was observed towards a plateau of potentials at about –0.300 V (vs. Ag/AgCl). This plateau corresponds to cathodic potentials recorded in the abiotic ASW, thus suggesting a depolarisation process of the Au electrode associated with biofilm dispersal.
Figure 5.43. Comparison of the OCP values for the 3.5 % NaCl solution, the abiotic and biotic ASW media recorded over 72 h, and also after 24 h prolonged exposure with the NO donor SNP in the biotic ASW medium.

Although the EIS data in Section 5.12 have been addressed for different OCP values (see Figure 5.43), herein this current study has outlined the naturally occurring bacterial biofilm (without polarisation) on a Au surface.
5.13 Quantitative analysis of the EIS measurements

5.13.1 Study of the capacitive parameters using imaginary impedance plots

The imaginary impedance plots (Figures 5.44 to 5.47) in the form logarithm of the –imaginary part vs. logarithm of the frequency were presented to justify the use of the CPE parameters in the EC model for Au in the chloride media (see Section 2.6.7) in Table 4.4 [5.67]. This representation can often lead to a fine description of the capacitive behaviour in contrast with the qualitative assessment utilising the Bode (|Z| vs. f) plots (see Section 5.12) since the slopes can be associated with the CPE behaviour, in addition any peaks reveal characteristic time constants [5.67].

Figure 5.44. Representation of the logarithm of the –imaginary part vs. the logarithm of the frequency at OCP for a 0.2 mm diameter Au electrode in the 3.5 % NaCl solution – OCP values: +0.090, –0.070, –0.215 and –0.225 V (vs. Ag/AgCl) after a 0, 4, 21 and 72 h immersion, respectively.
Figure 5.45. Representation of the logarithm of the –imaginary part vs. the logarithm of the frequency at OCP for a 0.2 mm diameter Au electrode in the abiotic ASW medium – OCP values: +0.085, –0.070, –0.250 and –0.325 V (vs. Ag/AgCl) after a 0, 4, 21 and 72 h immersion, respectively.

Figure 5.46. Representation of the logarithm of the –imaginary part vs. the logarithm of the frequency at OCP for a 0.2 mm diameter Au electrode in the biotic ASW medium (abiotic: –1 h before inoculation) – OCP values: +0.090, +0.085, –0.075, –0.460 and –0.560 V (vs. Ag/AgCl) at –1 h (abiotic) and after a 0, 4, 21 and 72 h immersion, respectively.
Figure 5.47. Representation of the logarithm of the –imaginary part vs. the logarithm of the frequency at OCP for a 0.2 mm diameter Au electrode with 500 nM NO donor SNP in ASW medium for 24 h (abiotic: −1 h before inoculation and biotic growth for 72 h) – OCP values: +0.080, −0.470, −0.470, −0.470 and −0.325 V (vs. Ag/AgCl) at −1 h (abiotic) and 72 h (biotic) after a 0, 1 and 24 h treatment with SNP, respectively.

For clarity, only the slope at 0 h computed at higher frequencies, between 100 to 100,000 Hz, has been labelled with the corresponding value of the empirical exponent of the CPE for the NaCl test solution, the abiotic and biotic ASW, and also 500 nM SNP in ASW in Figures 5.44 to 5.47. Overall, the values of the \( n \) coefficients calculated using this graphical method for the whole experimental duration in Figures 5.44 to 5.47 are presented alongside with the regression procedure in Tables 5.10 to 5.13, thus confirm the presence of the CPE in the high frequency part of the spectra, 100 to 100,000 Hz, and is consistent with [5.67].
5.13.2 EC fitting

Tables 5.10 to 5.13 show the results of the EC modelled data for all the Au / chloride media interfaces fitted using the Gamry Echem Analyst software (version 5.30). The values were normalised to the sensing area of the 0.2 mm diameter Au electrode. All the interfaces were modelled using an EC with mixed kinetic and charge transfer control (Figure 2.20 in Section 2.6.7), i.e. for the interfacial current exchange in the presence of diffusion [5.24, 5.28, 5.31, 5.43]. Whereas the double layer capacitance $C_{dl}$ was used to describe the interfacial charge distribution for the NaCl solution, $C_{con}$ and $C_{EPS}$ represent the conditioning film (adsorbed organic layer) for the abiotic ASW and the biofilm for the biotic ASW, respectively. A $W$ component for DO diffusion to the Au surface (from the bulk solution and/or enhanced by enzymatic activity) was added to the model (i.e. in series with $R_{ct}$), see Figure 2.20 in Section 2.6.7.

The quality of the EC fit was quantified by assessing the $\chi^2$ error, which has to be suitably low ($\chi^2 \leq 10^{-4}$) to achieve good fit [5.68], see Section 4.7. In contrast, $\chi^2$ errors significantly larger than $10^{-3}$ are usually explained by the presence of partially localised aberrant points due to random and spikes in the impedance spectra [5.68]. Overall, the $\chi^2$ errors in Tables 5.10 to 5.13 were reasonably low, thus showing reliable EC fit of the impedance data. In addition, the $R_s$ values of the chloride media in Tables 5.10 to 5.13 were between 0.163 and 0.170 $\Omega$ cm$^2$, thus corresponding to values of $\sigma = 47.0 \pm 1.0$ mS cm$^{-1}$ at 19 °C (see Equation 2.25 in Section 2.6.7) for salinity values of 35 ‰, and also clearly demonstrating the minimum effect of the external reference capacitance ($C_{ref}$) on the measurements in Tables 5.10 to 5.13 (see Section 2.6.7).

From the surface charge density, an estimate of the number sessile bacteria can be determined after subtraction of the abiotic response, see Equation 2.32 in Section 2.8.2.2.

Whereas the standard deviations for the $R_s$, $R_{ct}$ and $Y_0$ parameters were obtained using the regression procedure of the Gamry Echem Analyst software (version 5.30), those for the $C_{eff}$ values were estimated utilising the analytical expression for the relative uncertainty of Equation 2.27 (with $R_f$ similar to $R_{ct}$ for a thin biofilm in Section 2.6.7) where the $R_{ct}$ and $Y_0$ components can correspond to measured data, see Equation 5.20 [5.69]. In contrast, no standard deviation was computed for the $Q_{ADS}$ values (and
the deduced numbers of bacterial cells) since those derived parameters result from computed (and non-measured) data.

\[
\frac{\sigma_{C_{\text{eff}}}}{C_{\text{eff}}} = \frac{1}{n} \left( \frac{\sigma_{R_{\text{ct}}}}{R_{\text{ct}}} \right) + \frac{1}{n} \left( \frac{\sigma_{Y_0}}{Y_0} \right)
\]  

(5.20)

where \( \sigma_{C_{\text{eff}}} \), \( \sigma_{R_{\text{ct}}} \) and \( \sigma_{Y_0} \) are the calculated uncertainty values for the \( C_{\text{eff}} \), \( R_{\text{ct}} \) and \( Y_0 \) parameters. These expressions of measurement uncertainty represent estimated standard deviation values in Tables 5.10 to 5.13.
Table 5.10. Impedance data for the Au / 3.5 % NaCl interface.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conditioning</th>
<th>OCP / V (vs. Ag/AgCl)</th>
<th>$R_s$ / Ω cm$^2$</th>
<th>$R_{ct}$ / Ω cm$^2$</th>
<th>$Z_{Cdl}$</th>
<th>$C_{eff}$ (C dl)</th>
<th>$Z_W$</th>
<th>$\chi^2 / 10^4$</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3.5 % NaCl</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0 h</td>
<td>+0.090</td>
<td>0.165 ± 0.006</td>
<td>1605 ± 83</td>
<td>14.5 ± 0.3</td>
<td>0.93</td>
<td>0.99</td>
<td>10.9 ± 0.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 h</td>
<td>−0.070</td>
<td>0.163 ± 0.006</td>
<td>1579 ± 95</td>
<td>14.8 ± 0.3</td>
<td>0.93</td>
<td>0.99</td>
<td>11.2 ± 0.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21 h</td>
<td>−0.215</td>
<td>0.167 ± 0.006</td>
<td>1508 ± 71</td>
<td>14.1 ± 0.3</td>
<td>0.93</td>
<td>0.99</td>
<td>10.6 ± 0.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72 h</td>
<td>−0.225</td>
<td>0.164 ± 0.006</td>
<td>1505 ± 89</td>
<td>14.0 ± 0.4</td>
<td>0.93</td>
<td>0.99</td>
<td>10.5 ± 0.2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 5.11. Impedance data for the Au / abiotic ASW interface.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conditioning</th>
<th>OCP / V (vs. Ag/AgCl)</th>
<th>$R_s$ / Ω cm$^2$</th>
<th>$R_{ct}$ / Ω cm$^2$</th>
<th>$Z_{Ccon}$</th>
<th>$C_{eff}$ (C con)</th>
<th>$Q_{ADS}$</th>
<th>$Z_W$</th>
<th>$\chi^2 / 10^4$</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Abiotic ASW</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0 h</td>
<td>+0.085</td>
<td>0.167 ± 0.008</td>
<td>220 ± 8</td>
<td>28.8 ± 0.9</td>
<td>0.85</td>
<td>0.99</td>
<td>11.8 ± 0.1</td>
<td>792 ± 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 h</td>
<td>−0.070</td>
<td>0.169 ± 0.006</td>
<td>180 ± 8</td>
<td>26.2 ± 0.9</td>
<td>0.85</td>
<td>0.99</td>
<td>10.2 ± 0.1</td>
<td>837 ± 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21 h</td>
<td>−0.250</td>
<td>0.170 ± 0.005</td>
<td>161 ± 6</td>
<td>28.1 ± 0.9</td>
<td>0.85</td>
<td>0.99</td>
<td>10.8 ± 0.1</td>
<td>987 ± 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72 h</td>
<td>−0.325</td>
<td>0.166 ± 0.008</td>
<td>172 ± 6</td>
<td>43.7 ± 1.5</td>
<td>0.83</td>
<td>0.99</td>
<td>16.0 ± 0.2</td>
<td>1020 ± 13</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 5.12. Impedance data for the Au / biotic ASW interface (abiotic: –1 h before inoculation).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conditioning</th>
<th>OCP / V (vs. Ag/AgCl)</th>
<th>$R_s$ / Ω cm$^2$</th>
<th>$R_d$ / Ω cm$^2$</th>
<th>$Z_{Cm}$</th>
<th>$C_{eff} (C_{con})$</th>
<th>$C_{eff} (C_{EPS})$</th>
<th>$Z_{CPS}$</th>
<th>$Q_{ADS}$</th>
<th>Number of cells</th>
<th>$Z_W$</th>
<th>$X^2 / 10^4$</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Abiotic ASW</td>
<td>–1 h</td>
<td>+0.090</td>
<td>0.163 ± 0.007</td>
<td>331 ± 13</td>
<td>20.1 ± 0.4</td>
<td>0.89</td>
<td>10.8 ± 0.1</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>4.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0 h</td>
<td>+0.085</td>
<td>0.170 ± 0.004</td>
<td>950 ± 60</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>76.2 ± 1.6</td>
<td>0.88</td>
<td>950 ± 60</td>
<td>76.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4 h</td>
<td>–0.075</td>
<td>0.168 ± 0.003</td>
<td>876 ± 45</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>103.2 ± 1.5</td>
<td>0.87</td>
<td>103.2 ± 1.5</td>
<td>72.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>21 h</td>
<td>–0.460</td>
<td>0.165 ± 0.003</td>
<td>618 ± 31</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>142.8 ± 2.1</td>
<td>0.85</td>
<td>142.8 ± 2.1</td>
<td>93.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>72 h</td>
<td>–0.560</td>
<td>0.169 ± 0.003</td>
<td>296 ± 26</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>167.6 ± 2.8</td>
<td>0.85</td>
<td>167.6 ± 2.8</td>
<td>98.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Biotic ASW</td>
<td>0 h</td>
<td>–0.075</td>
<td>0.168 ± 0.003</td>
<td>876 ± 45</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>103.2 ± 1.5</td>
<td>0.87</td>
<td>103.2 ± 1.5</td>
<td>72.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4 h</td>
<td>–0.460</td>
<td>0.165 ± 0.003</td>
<td>618 ± 31</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>142.8 ± 2.1</td>
<td>0.85</td>
<td>142.8 ± 2.1</td>
<td>93.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>72 h</td>
<td>–0.560</td>
<td>0.169 ± 0.003</td>
<td>296 ± 26</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>167.6 ± 2.8</td>
<td>0.85</td>
<td>167.6 ± 2.8</td>
<td>98.6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 5.13. Impedance data for the Au / biotic ASW interface after treatment with 500 nM of NO donor SNP (abiotic: –1 h before inoculation and biotic growth for 72 h).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conditioning</th>
<th>OCP / V (vs. Ag/AgCl)</th>
<th>$R_s$ / Ω cm$^2$</th>
<th>$R_d$ / Ω cm$^2$</th>
<th>$Z_{Cm}$</th>
<th>$C_{eff} (C_{con})$</th>
<th>$C_{eff} (C_{EPS})$</th>
<th>$Z_{CPS}$</th>
<th>$Q_{ADS}$</th>
<th>Number of cells</th>
<th>$Z_W$</th>
<th>$X^2 / 10^4$</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Abiotic ASW</td>
<td>–1 h</td>
<td>+0.080</td>
<td>0.162 ± 0.006</td>
<td>233 ± 9</td>
<td>31.1 ± 0.9</td>
<td>0.85</td>
<td>13.0 ± 0.5</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>5.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Biotic ASW</td>
<td>72 h</td>
<td>–0.470</td>
<td>0.164 ± 0.003</td>
<td>759 ± 66</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>95.3 ± 0.8</td>
<td>0.92</td>
<td>95.3 ± 0.8</td>
<td>75.8 ± 1.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>500 nM SNP in ASW</td>
<td>0 h</td>
<td>–0.470</td>
<td>0.160 ± 0.003</td>
<td>886 ± 57</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>55.1 ± 0.6</td>
<td>0.92</td>
<td>55.1 ± 0.6</td>
<td>42.4 ± 0.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1 h</td>
<td>–0.470</td>
<td>0.169 ± 0.004</td>
<td>946 ± 60</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>37.9 ± 0.5</td>
<td>0.93</td>
<td>37.9 ± 0.5</td>
<td>29.5 ± 0.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>24 h</td>
<td>–0.325</td>
<td>0.168 ± 0.004</td>
<td>325 ± 150</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>32.2 ± 0.4</td>
<td>0.93</td>
<td>32.2 ± 0.4</td>
<td>27.2 ± 0.5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5.13.2.1 EC fitting for the NaCl solution

The impedance data in Table 5.10 was relatively constant over the 72 h test in 3.5 % NaCl. These include the $R_{ct}$ values circa 1500 $\Omega$ cm$^2$, thus demonstrating the absence of a detectable change of charge transfer (interfacial ORR) with time at the Au / 3.5 % NaCl interface. Likewise, the CPE parameters relative to $C_{dl}$ were constant with $n = 0.9$, indicative of a capacitive behaviour (Helmholtz theory in electrochemistry) [5.43,5.70]. The values of $C_{dl}$ were on average equal to 10.8 ± 0.2 $\mu$F cm$^{-2}$ using Equation 2.27 in Section 2.6.7, thereby consistent with the mean value of $C_{dl}$ (14.25 $\mu$F cm$^{-2}$) reported for a bare Au electrode immersed in a standard solution [5.17]. For the Warburg impedance, the CPE parameters had values of $n$ relatively close to 0.5, consistent with a diffusion layer of infinite thickness.

5.13.2.2 EC fitting for the abiotic test solution

Similar to the 3.5 % NaCl, the EIS data for the abiotic ASW in Table 5.11 did not show significant changes in impedance over a 72 h duration. However, the $R_{ct}$ values (with approximately a 10-fold decrease) for the ASW were lower to that for the NaCl. In analogy with protein adsorption on metallic surfaces [5.46,5.71,5.72], this can be explained by the presence of blocking organic material, i.e. a conditioning layer on the Au electrode (consistent with Section 5.8), thus affecting the overall interfacial charge transfer (decrease of the resistance parameters) [5.64]. In this instance, the values of $Q_{ADS}$ (Table 5.11) representative of the surface charge density corresponding to adsorbed organic material were assessed using Equation 2.31 in Section 2.8.2.2 [5.45,5.71-5.73]. Overall, the values (in analogy with adsorbed proteins on an Au surface) were within the same order of magnitude as in [5.71]. Additionally, the CPE parameters for the Warburg impedance with values of $n = 0.5$ were indicative of more pronounced DO diffusion across the interface, suggesting that the conditioning layer (thin porous membrane) may be suitable for enhanced mass transport properties from the bulk solution [5.10-5.12]. Overall, this process corresponds to the ORR at the Au / abiotic ASW interface.
5.13.2.3 EC fitting for the biotic test solution

Whereas the impedance data for the abiotic ASW in Table 5.12 were similar to that in Table 5.11, changes in the EIS data (increase in the capacitance and $R_{ct}$ values) were observed (Table 5.12) at 0 h, i.e. after inoculation with bacteria. This can be explained by an initial complex modification of the interfacial properties when pioneering bacteria colonise the Au surface (discharge electrons and thus charge the interface) [5.50,5.51], coinciding with an early stage of microfouling (adaptation to changing environment [5.27]) preceding redox processes, i.e. enzymatic activity. After prolonged exposure, a gradual increase of the capacitive parameters was apparent in contrast with a gradual decrease in the $R_{ct}$ values, thus consistent with Section 2.8.2.2. This can be attributed to an enhancement of electrons discharge induced by bacterial cells (within the biofilm) to the Au electrode, which support the charge transfer process associated with the enhanced enzymatic ORR at the Au / biotic ASW interface [5.33,5.74]. The CPE parameters for diffusion had values of $n = 0.5$, thus showing that the overall kinetic process is mixed with DO diffusion from the bulk solution.

5.13.2.4 EC fitting for the NO donor SNP

Similarly, when the initial EIS data for the abiotic and biotic ASW in Table 5.13 were comparable to that in Table 5.12, an increase of the $R_{ct}$ values was observed with time in contrast with a decrease of the capacitive parameters to reach values of $27.2 \pm 0.5 \mu F cm^{-2}$ after addition of the NO donor SNP. The decrease in capacitance can be explained by a degradation of the biofilm exposed to the biocide, where affected and lysed bacterial cells can modify the biofilm structure [5.51]. Likewise, the increase in $R_{ct}$ values is indicative of suppressed interfacial charge transfer (enhanced ORR via enzymatic process) with presumably a physical modification of the interface (e.g. biofilm sloughing confirmed by the confocal analyses in Section 5.12.4).
5.13.2.5 Significance of the capacitive parameters

The $C_{\text{eff}}$ parameters for the seawater solutions have a relatively complex behaviour (see Section 2.6.7). The capacitance values depend on the dielectric properties (i.e. the effective dielectric constant) and the thickness of the capacitive layer, which have dual effects. During adhesion, it is more likely that the overall ionic charge across the capacitance increases, thus enhancing the dielectric effective constant and decreasing the film thickness [5.74]. Nevertheless, the capacitance is not just dependent of the extent of the adsorbed organic material, it is also a complex function of other parameters related to the Au / solution interface, which may also be dependent (in analogy with protein adsorption on a metal surface [5.45, 5.46]) on the structural, physical and chemical properties of the organic material (thickness and structure of the biofilm and the Au / biofilm / solution interface).

5.13.3 Relationship for the bacterial biofilm sensor

The capacitance parameters have shown promise in quantifying planktonic / suspended bacteria. Herein, the interfacial capacitance was proposed as an electrochemical parameter to study bacterial attachment to metallic surfaces [5.50, 5.51, 5.75]. Previous studies on protein attached on metallic surfaces demonstrated that the surface charge density was proportional to the amount of adsorbed protein [5.45]. Using Equation 2.32 in Section 2.8.2.2, a relationship between the surface charge density of sessile cells and their adhered population can be addressed in analogy with adsorbed protein on a metal surface [5.45, 5.76]. These considerations were based on the assumptions in Section 2.8.2.2, such as the reported total surface charge of bacterial strains ($\approx 10^{-12}$ C per bacterium) during adhesion [5.77] used in Figure 5.48 (data in the absence of *).
The dependence between the surface charge density accounting for bacterial biofilm (values in Tables 5.12 and 5.13) and the corresponding number of adhered bacterial cells is shown in Figure 5.48 (data in the absence of *). A few values for the abiotic ASW (ranging between 4.1 and 6.5 µC cm\(^{-2}\) in Tables 5.11 to 5.13) have been added to represent the conditioning film formation, where there is no adhered bacterial cell. The estimated number of attached bacterial cells (mean value) utilising the \textit{ex situ} confocal microscopy in Table 5.9 have been used in Figure 5.48 (data in the presence of *), where the corresponding deduced values (based on the hypotheses in Section 2.8.2.2) lie in close to the ± standard deviation or are within the same order of magnitude of the data in the presence of *, see Figure 5.48. In addition, the percentage coverage for the abiotic and biotic ASW, and also the 500 nM SNP in ASW (mean value in Figure 5.41, see Section 5.12.5) are shown for a direct comparison with the data in the presence of * in Figure 5.48 assuming that a complete surface coverage (100 %) / bacterial monolayer biofilm on the Au surface can correspond to \(1.6 \times 10^8\) cells cm\(^{-2}\), see Table 5.9 in Section 5.12.6.

Figure 5.48. Number of sessile bacterial cells as a function of the surface charge density – data in the presence of * represent the estimations of number of attached bacterial cells (y-axis) using the \textit{ex situ} confocal microscopy studies in Table 5.9, together with the bacterial cell population (data in the absence of *) deduced utilising the hypotheses in Section 2.8.2.2, corresponding to the experimental impedance data (x-axis) – surface coverage analyses \((P < 0.05)\) in Section 5.12.5 are shown for a direct comparison with the data in the presence of *.
After inoculation (0 h) for the biotic ASW, the overall surface charge density increases (i.e. modification of the adsorbed organic layer and pioneering bacterial adhesion at the interface, see Section 5.12.3) and can range between 21.4 and 39.7 µC cm⁻² in Tables 5.12 and 5.13 over a 72 h immersion, therefore explained by the occurrence of a growing bacterial biofilm. Using Figure 5.48 (data in the absence of *), the corresponding number of sessile bacterial cells for the 72 h biofilmed Au surface (Table 5.12) is approximately 3.5 × 10⁷ cells cm⁻², thus consistent with the estimation of 8.3 ± 0.8 × 10⁷ cells cm⁻² utilising ex situ confocal microscopy analyses in Table 5.9, see Figure 5.48 (data in the presence of *).

Although within the same order of magnitude, the difference observed between the 72 h biotic ASW data for Tables 5.12 (39.7 µC cm⁻²) and 5.13 (30.5 µC cm⁻²) in Figure 5.48 (data in the absence of *) was expected due to stochastic / random effects incurred by biological systems [5.78] and the presence of different Au surface active areas per testing [5.79]. In contrast, the overall charge density decreases after treatment with 500 nM of NO donor SNP (between 17.0 and 10.9 µC cm⁻² in Table 5.13 after a 24 h immersion), thereby associated with bacterial biofilm dispersal, see Section 5.12.4. Similar to the 72 h biotic Au surface, estimate of sessile bacterial cells for the 500 nM SNP in ASW leads to 5.7 × 10⁶ cells cm⁻² in Figure 5.48 (data in the absence of *), i.e. it is in good agreement with the estimation of 9.3 ± 0.8 × 10⁶ cells cm⁻² in Table 5.9, see Figure 5.48 (data in the presence of *).

Variations noticed between estimations for the EIS response and confocal microscopy analyses can be explained by the nature of the experiments. Whereas in situ EIS monitoring was performed (non-attached bacterial cells can potentially influence the EIS response), ex situ confocal microscopy was employed (occurrence of an overall more mature bacterial biofilm), see Sections 4.7 and 4.9.

Although the validity of the relationship (between the surface charge density and the number of sessile bacterial cells) obtained in Figure 5.48 (data in the absence of *) needs to be further investigated (see Section 2.8.2.2), a correlation with the results using the ex situ confocal microscopy was demonstrated for the data at 72 h (Table 5.12) and 24 h (Table 5.13), see Figure 5.48. This clearly suggests that the surface charge density can be utilised as a quantifiable biofouling indicator, wherein the capacitance can be the main parameter and ultimately the measurement procedure could be tailored to obtain it (the capacitance) using a specific frequency range, i.e. between 100 to 100,000 Hz in Section 5.13.1.
Overall, Figure 5.48 has demonstrated that the electrochemical impedance data (*i.e.* surface charge density) have potentially the capability of providing accurate quantifiable values of number of adhered bacterial cells (in good agreement with the confocal microscopy analyses in Table 5.9). Although assessment of sessile bacterial population should ideally be done for a range of times (between 0 and 72 h), the relationship between the number of adhered bacterial cells and $Q_{\text{ADS}}$ in a biotic environment in Figure 5.48 (*data in the absence of *) can be informative of potential quantitative inhibition strategy / control of bacterial biofilm (*e.g.* using a threshold $Q_{\text{ADS}}$ value in order to control the extent of bacterial biofilm).

### 5.14 Summary of EIS analysis

Overall, the EIS response in Section 5.12 demonstrated clear differences between abiotic and biotic media. Herein, the qualitative EIS analysis has shown that initial marine bacterial biofilms can be electrochemically detected under a controlled flow cell environment. Importantly, a main parameter of the EIS response in the quantitative analysis (Section 5.13), which is a capacitive component (100 to 100,000 Hz), can be used to quantify biofilm and subsequently gauge the extent of biofouling. For the first time, the number of attached bacterial cells on the Au surface (after a 72 h biofilm growth and a 24 h exposure to 500 nM of the NO donor SNP) estimated from the impedance data (*in situ* sensing) were in good agreement with an *ex situ* assessment using confocal microscopy analyses. Consequently, this reinforces that the relationship between the surface charge density induced by biofilm and their corresponding sessile bacterial population can provide greater insight into sensor calibration curves used for real time biofilm monitoring devices.

Similarly, the impedance response after addition of 500 nM of the NO donor SNP in biotic condition uniquely demonstrated a significant change in impedance, which was corroborated (using confocal microscopy) by important biofilm detachment on the Au surface. This was clearly indicative of an effective and efficient biofilm dispersal using low, non-toxic concentration of NO donor SNP, therefore consistent with [5.57,5.58].

These considerations may support the studies on the antifouling efficiency and the molecular mechanisms inherent to the nanomolar range NO donor SNP dosed on a metal surface. Little is known about the main factors that can influence the bacterial dispersal mechanisms due to chemical stresses [5.59,5.80]. Overall, the mechanisms of biofilm maturation, structuring and detachment may be controlled by quorum
sensing, where gene expression can trigger enzymatic degradation of proteins or detergent-like peptides within the biofilm [5.81]. Likewise, the gene expression distribution was shown to be markedly different between sessile and planktonic mode of growth [5.81], thus suggesting that a suitable cleaning procedure for flowing cells would be inappropriate against biofilms [5.36,5.59].

In addition, it was shown that the biocide concentration is a critical parameter for biofouling control [5.57,5.82]. For instance, concentrations below the threshold required to inhibit growth can enhance biofilm formation [5.82]. In this current project and as proposed by Barraud et al. [5.57], 500 nM of the NO donor SNP can be the optimum concentration to clean a substratum; i.e. a metallic surface. This low, non-toxic concentration of NO donor SNP consists in an environmentally friendly biocide employed to keep costs at a minimum and it represents a good alternative to non-efficient and toxic chlorine widely used in industrial fouling [5.36]. In practice, the duration (ideally short) and frequency of dosing (continuous dosing, shock treatment and pulse dosing), and also the flow regime (allowable flow rate) are of great importance to define suitable biocide dosing strategies for biofilm control [5.82]. Ideally, an intelligent combination of these three factors should be addressed to maintain the operating systems and reduce the capital costs incurred. However, it is still unclear how this can be achieved since biofilms are competent biological systems that can constantly adapt to extremely different environmental conditions [5.36,5.47,5.48].

Therefore, these results suggest new perspectives to trigger a biocide strategy when necessary using Au multi-microelectrode arrays for enhanced sensitivity, objectivity and rapidity of analysis, and also biofouling quantification in seawater piping systems [5.10,5.83-5.85]. In real systems, the Au multi-microelectrode arrays have to be located on likely biofouling positions such as in low turbulent regions within the seawater systems, e.g. stagnation zones [5.86].
Chapter 6 – Conclusions and further work
6.1 Conclusions

6.1.1 Thesis overview

Uniquely, this thesis has addressed a qualitative and quantitative microbial biofilm study combining microbiological and engineering expertise to embed a 0.2 mm diameter Au electrode into a once through microbial flow cell in order to: (i) measure and explore in detail the enzymatic enhancement of the ORR over 72 h; and (ii) monitor (after a 24 h exposure) the subsequent biofilm detachment induced by 500 nM of the NO donor SNP. Confocal microscopy imaging has also been utilised to provide insightful corroboration of the bacterial biofilm / Au electrode interfacial processes. It was demonstrated, for the first time, that the numbers of sessile bacterial cells estimated from the EIS response (72 h biotic ASW and 24 h treatment with 500 nM of the NO donor SNP) were consistent with those for the confocal microscopy analyses.

Testing was undertaken using well-defined conditions (Table 6.1):

Table 6.1. Summary of the experimental conditions for this current study.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Experimental conditions</th>
<th>Effect on bacterial biofilms / measurable signal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>low laminar flow regime ($R_e \approx 1$)</td>
<td>flow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>light irradiance of $0.12 \pm 0.01 \mu$mol photons m$^{-2}$ s$^{-1}$</td>
<td>light radiation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>controlled room temperature at $18 \pm 1 , ^\circ$C</td>
<td>temperature</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOC laboratory facilities (under atmospheric pressure)</td>
<td>water depth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Faraday cage</td>
<td>electromagnetic interference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>continuous fresh, flush and aerated conditions (6.90 ppm)</td>
<td>DO level</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enriched carbon source ASW of known composition</td>
<td>nutrient / carbon source supply</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35 ‰ ASW</td>
<td>osmotic pressure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pH 8.1</td>
<td>pH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200 μL aliquot of 2 h-old Pseudoalteromonas sp. strain NCIMB 2021 culture, corresponding to an initial bacterial fouling population of approximately $3.5 \times 10^6$ cells mL$^{-1}$ having a growth rate of $0.15 , h^{-1}$ and a mean generation time of 4.52 h</td>
<td>physiology</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
6.1.2 Main thesis thrusts

Chapters 2 and 3 have established the main scientific and engineering concerns to assist and justify the development of this investigations experimental methodology (as outlined in Chapter 4).

6.1.2.1 Summary of Chapter 1

This study has been motivated by the detrimental effects (and the unsolved problems to reduce capital costs) of biofouling and biocorrosion on metallic surfaces directly exposed to seawater, such as can be found in marine heat exchangers and seawater handling systems. In this instance, both the fluid flow and heat transfer performance of seawater systems can be dramatically affected, potentially resulting in blockages and failures of fluid handling components. Additionally, existing inhibition strategies are often costly and inappropriate, leading to subsequent microorganism resistance and/or toxicity problems (i.e. toxic by-products discharge in seawater), plus there in greater concerns due to increased environmental legislature. Developing an alternative means of controlling all biofoulers is a great challenge, however, there are substantial benefits to be gained. Herein, this thesis has focused on the development of a reliable, accurate and quantitative biofilm sensing approach.

6.1.2.2 Summary of Chapter 2

It is often reported that bacterial biofilms play a fundamental role (the initial development and cohesion of marine communities) in the complex biofouling process on metallic surfaces. In particular for this study, the genus *Pseudoalteromonas* can trigger larval attachment and subsequent macrofouling inside heat exchangers. Although corrosion studies on anaerobic bacteria (e.g. SRB) are well documented, the literature for aerobic microbes is sparse. Perhaps, the most established mechanism for aerobic bacteria on a metal surface is the enzymatic enhancement of ORR using *Pseudoalteromonas* sp. (of relevance for this investigation) but this still needs to be fully addressed. Although Cu-based pipes (traditionally used for marine heat exchangers) are known for their antifouling properties against macrofouling, microfouling (preceding macrofouling) remains an issue, thus emphasising the importance of early warning bacterial biofilm detection (i.e. using a 72 h immersion for the current study). Likewise, laboratory experiments have enabled to demonstrate the
viscoelastic properties of a biofilm, where a fundamental understanding of the flow effect on a biofilm established inside pipes is limited. Consequently, a low laminar flow regime was chosen (for the proposed approach) to minimise the overall influence of flow at the interface.

A broad range of techniques is available for biofilm detection but a few are applicable to seawater systems, where a clear understanding of the significance of the measurable signal can easily be subject to debate. In this thesis, EIS using a 0.2 mm diameter Au electrode was selected as an in situ, non-destructive (no applied polarisation) biofilm monitoring technique rarely used for ocean sensing. This was representative of a starting point to sense interfacial properties (i.e. enzymatic enhanced ORR) and the mass transport near the interface, when a bacterial biofilm grows on the Au surface. In corroboration with the electrochemical investigation, CLSM was identified as a mature characterisation method for quantitative biofilm evaluation (i.e. biofilm thickness and magnitude number of sessile cell population) and assessment of the effectiveness of a biofilm disruption strategy. For the current study, it was decided to transfer the knowledge on the novel and attractive approach to marine NO inhibition strategy developed at Southampton (where NO can be involved in natural biofilm dispersal) to establish an environmentally friendly NO dosing strategy with the ultimate goal to control in situ NO generation.

6.1.2.3 Summary of Chapter 3

In a diverse and complex environment such as in seawater, substantial knowledge of physico-chemical and biological properties is required. For instance, bacterial communities can affect the marine ecology (e.g. pH and DO gradients across a biofilm-covered metallic surface) but also they are sensitive to environmental stresses, such as changes in DO level for aerobic species. A flow cell device was chosen as a suitable continuous culturing growth system for this investigation, i.e. allowing embedment of the Au electrode. The aerobic bacterial fouling Pseudoalteromonas sp. NCIMB 2021 widespread in ocean was selected for the electrochemical biofilm study, where a NOC marine flow cytometer would be used for bacterial growth characterisation. Overall, Chapter 3 has enabled the justification of the experimental conditions for this proposed approach in Table 6.1.
6.1.2.4 Summary of Chapter 4

A modified once through flow system (using a 0.2 mm diameter embedded Au electrode with a 0.3 µm Al₂O₃ powder final polishing) was developed to electrochemically monitor initial bacterial biofilm development and extent, and also disruption under a controlled low laminar flow condition ($R_e \approx 1$). A critical review of the published literature has established the limitations of flow cell channel designs for bacterial biofilm culturing, where engineering concepts, together with microbiological expertise, are necessary. For this study, the flow cell (with similar dimensions to flow cell devices proposed in the literature) was designed to:

- minimise flow separation and pressure losses at the inlet / outlet,
- operate in fully developed flow conditions (i.e. $L_e = 0.33 \times 10^{-3}$ m for a $40.0 \times 10^{-3}$ m flow channel length) with substantially low wall shear stress ($0.31 \times 10^{-3}$ Pa) and pressure drop ($1.99 \times 10^{-3}$ Pa) for a clean rectangular flow channel, and
- allow initial bacterial adhesion and subsequent development using a relatively long residence time of 351.6 s.

The test solutions were composed of:

- 3.5 % NaCl (baseline for the ORR),
- abiotic ASW (baseline for a conditioning film),
- control ASW (baseline for complex metal-ions),
- biotic ASW (biofilm) and,
- 500 nM of the NO donor SNP in biotic ASW (biofilm dispersal)

The physico-chemical properties of these solutions before testing (0 h), i.e. salinity close to 35 ‰, pH ≈ 8, temperature of 18 ± 1 °C and DO level of ≈ 6.90 ppm, were representative of surface seawater from the North Atlantic equilibrated with the atmosphere.
The bacterial growth characteristics (growth rate, mean generation time and initial growth phase, and also the overall number of planktonic cells at 0 h) of the *Pseudoalteromonas* sp. NCIMB 2021 were determined using a NOC marine flow cytometer to address the bacterial fouling properties inside the flow channel. CV tests were performed to support the use of the EIS at OCP values for biofilm monitoring. A comparative methodology between abiotic and biotic conditions was employed to address detectable modifications of the interfacial response. Overall, the qualitative electrochemical investigation was corroborated with confocal microscopy examinations for a visual and a quantitative assessment of the presence and extent of bacterial biofilms on the Au surface.

### 6.1.2.5 Summary of Chapter 5

**Bacterial growth curve**

It has been demonstrated in Sections 5.1 and 5.2 that:

- The modified flow cell for this study was suitable for bacterial biofilm culturing with a growth rate of 0.15 h\(^{-1}\) and a mean generation time of 4.52 h.
- Growth variability between the flow cell and the batch culture was minimal, *i.e.* the growth curves were similar.

**CV**

Sections 5.4 to 5.7 have shown that:

- The electrochemical response of Au in 1 M H\(_2\)SO\(_4\) was consistent with a typical Au electrode acid voltammogram.
- The CV analysis for the 3.5 % NaCl test solution was in good agreement with a conventional voltammogram at the interface Au / 3.5 % NaCl, where the ORR can be monitored between –0.200 V to the plateau at –0.700 V (vs. Ag/AgCl) and self-cleaning / generation process of the Au surface can be achieved in the anodic region.
Results in Sections 5.8 and 5.9 have proven that:

- The electrochemical behaviour for the abiotic ASW was overall similar to that for a Au surface immersed in an abiotic seawater system.
- For the NaCl test solution, the ORR can be detected between $-0.200 \, \text{V}$ to the plateau at $-0.700 \, \text{V (vs. Ag/AgCl)}$, whereas the anodic region can be used for self-cleaning of the Au electrode.
- An oxidation wave between $+0.500 \, \text{V}$ to $+0.900 \, \text{V (vs. Ag/AgCl)}$ corresponding to the oxidation of organic material was detectable.
- Bulk solution metal-ions can electro-actively adsorb / desorb on the Au surface at $\pm 0.125 \, \text{V (vs. Ag/AgCl)}$ via an overall diffusion dominant process, which can be suppressed by blocking organic material (representing $\approx 70 \, \%$ percentage surface coverage).
- Although quantitative analyses could not be fully addressed, this diffusion process was quasi-reversible ($\alpha_a \approx 0.82$ and $\alpha_c \approx 0.79$) with $z = 1$ for a single electron transfer process, thus corresponding to the redox couple Fe$^{3+}$ EDTA / Fe$^{2+}$ EDTA.
- The interface for the abiotic ASW was ascribed to a non-controllable and permeable coating similar to a monolayer with defects / pinholes favouring charge diffusion process in analogy with self-assembled monolayers on Au microelectrodes.

The main conclusions for Sections 5.10 and 5.11 are:

- A clear difference between the abiotic and biotic ASW was evident with a modification of the interfacial properties by bacterial biofilms (suppression of electro-active adsorbed / desorbed metal-ions due to the presence of a biofilm on the Au surface) and both an enzymatic enhanced ORR, and also oxidation reaction of organic material.
- The results in the cathodic region (enhanced ORR) were consistent with typical characteristics of commercialised electrochemical sensors using polarisation methods, such as the BioGEORGE and BioX.
- The self-cleaning of the biofilmed Au surface would not be straightforward for a potential range of $-1.000$ to $+1.000 \, \text{V (vs. Ag/AgCl)}$, therefore higher potentials to that for the NaCl and abiotic ASW would be required.
• The CV analysis for the biotic ASW has demonstrated the significance of polarisation on a biofilmed Au electrode, where herein EIS at OCP values has been chosen for bacterial biofilm study without imposing an electrical polarisation.

**Qualitative EIS / CLSM analysis**

It has been shown in Section 5.12 that:

• The EIS response for the NaCl test solution was relatively uniform with time and consistent with a typical interfacial impedance for a similar experimental sterile configuration, *i.e.* a capacitance behaviour at higher frequencies, between 10 to 100,000 Hz (interfacial charge distribution), and a diffusive / resistive characteristic at lower frequencies, between 0.1 to 10 Hz (diffusion of bulk DO across the Au surface to undergo the ORR).

• Similar to the NaCl test solution (where no detectable modification of the ORR occurred), a capacitance characteristic at higher frequencies, between 100 to 100,000 Hz (adsorbed organic layer or conditioning film), and a diffusive response at lower frequencies, between 0.1 to 100 Hz (diffusion of DO to the Au surface) were monitored for the abiotic ASW.

• The corroborative confocal images for the NaCl solution and abiotic ASW were indicative of minimum fouling potentially ascribed to non-specific binding.

• The EIS response for the biotic ASW was more complex with a clear extension of the capacitive region at higher frequencies, between 100 to 100,000 Hz (greater influence of adsorption processes / adhesion of pioneering bacteria), and a diffusive behaviour and subtle change in impedance over 72 h at lower frequencies, between 0.1 to 100 Hz (enzymatic enhanced ORR).

• Bacterial clusters were clearly seen on the CLSM images for the biotic ASW, thus consistent with the presence of a thin biofilm established at low laminar flow regime.

• The qualitative EIS / CLSM analysis has confirmed that bacterial biofilm growth and extent are a dynamic and complex process, where pioneering bacteria will initially colonise and develop on the Au surface in order to subsequently secrete EPS and favour enzymatic reactions for the enhanced ORR.

• Initial marine bacterial biofilms can be electrochemically detected under a controlled flow cell environment.

• A detectable increase in the interfacial resistance at lower frequencies, between 0.1 to 100 Hz (significant suppression of the interfacial ORR resulting from NO
induced stress on the bacterial biofilms), was evident after a 24 h exposure to 500 nM of the NO donor SNP on the 72 h-old biofilmed Au surface.

- Although the exact interfacial mechanism of NO action remains to be elucidated, the corresponding confocal images (after NO treatment) have revealed significant bacterial biofilm dispersal on the Au surface, thereby consistent with previous studies using the nanomolar range (500 nM) NO donor SNP.

- The fouling performances of the Au surface (using percentage coverage analysis) were greater for the biotic ASW (≈ 50 %) compared to that for the NaCl and abiotic ASW (a few percents for a minimum biofouling), and were significantly reduced (≈ 5 %) after a 24 h exposure to 500 nM of the NO donor SNP.

- The OCP values of the EIS data varied overall towards the cathodic region of the ORR (consistent with a previous study for Au in a seawater environment), thus suggesting a natural polarisation process associated with biofilm formation that is substantially suppressed after exposure to the 500 nM of the NO donor SNP (increase in the OCP values).

**Quantitative EIS / CLSM analysis**

Results in Section 5.13 have demonstrated that:

- An important parameter of the EIS response can be used to quantify bacterial biofilm and gauge the extent of biofouling, *i.e.* capacitive component (between 100 to 100,000 Hz) for assessment of a number of sessile bacteria.

- The bacterial biofilm thickness was approximately 3.0 µm (within the same order of magnitude of 4 – 8 µm thick biofilms reported for Au in seawater), when the corresponding sessile bacterial population was ≈ 8.3 × 10⁷ cells cm⁻² after a 72 h immersion.

- Uniquely, a method for assessing the number of sessile bacterial cells (on the Au surface) using *in situ* EIS monitoring has been addressed, where the results were in good agreement with a reliable *ex situ* investigation utilising confocal microscopy analyses.

- The relationship for the surface charge density (capacitive component / number of sessile bacterial density) can potentially provide valuable insight into calibration of real time biofilm monitoring devices.
6.1.3 Bacterial biofilm: a fascinating concept

As mentioned by Flemming et al. (and in particular for this thesis), a bacterial biofilm can be viewed as a bioreactor in the wrong place and time causing detrimental effects to engineering systems. However, it can also be regarded as a competent entity encompassing physico-chemical and biological properties, see Figure 6.1.
Figure 6.1. Schematic of the physico-chemical and biological properties of a bacterial biofilm.
In the context of fundamental research (Figure 6.1), a bacterial biofilm is a fascinating concept with biological, optical, mechanical and electro-(chemical) characteristics, which could inspire and revolution future generations in science and engineering, e.g. towards efficient biological fuel cells? From an engineering standpoint, the author believes that a holistic approach is necessary to understand a bacterial biofilm in details but it is extremely challenging. Herein, this thesis has focused on the electrochemical properties of bacterial biofilms, which can correspond to only one piece of the puzzle (Figure 6.1) and further corroborative studies are required for a complete story in the exciting field of bacterial biofilm.

6.2 Further work

Section 6.2.1 outlines the next step for this investigation, while Section 6.2.2 describes further fundamental approaches for bacterial biofilm studies.

6.2.1 Future studies born directly from this work

6.2.1.1 Sensor sensitivity

Further testing should be focused on the sensor sensitivity to amplify the measurable signal:

- Robust Au multi-microelectrode arrays could be developed and tested for enhanced bacterial biofilm quantification, where their performance could be compared to single electrodes used in-service.
- After validation of the robustness and reliability of Au multi-microelectrode arrays, mapping could be an attractive detection strategy (using a combination of different electrochemical techniques) to understand in detail the interactions between a bacterial biofilm and a metallic surface.
6.2.1.2 Sensing / operating system

The bacterial biofilm sensing approach (i.e. the sensor itself) only has significance when it is incorporated into a monitoring system (herein a flow cell device), thus:

- Microbiologists and engineers need greater consensus: (i) on the flow channel design for enhanced controllability of laboratory biofilm studies; and (ii) on the necessary addition of a chemostat / bioreactor in the flow system for nutrient supply and bacterial growth rate control.
- *In situ* microscopic observations inside the modified flow cell channel, i.e. using EIS [6.1], could provide insight into the kinetics of bacterial biofilm formation and development.
- A smart flow cell monitoring device (in analogy with corrosion monitoring systems [6.2]) could be developed for *in situ* measurement of important factors, such as pH, DO level, H₂O₂ concentration, mass transfer coefficient and temperature for correlation with bacterial biofilm growth and extent.
- Where the channel electrode is reported to be non-uniformly accessible (i.e. the current density distribution over the electrode is non-uniform [6.3]) in contrast with the RDE, a comparative study between the channel electrode and a RDE modified flow cell could be informative of an improved controllable (uniform) sensing surface.
- Steady-state dc EIS experiments in order to choose the suitable amplitude of the stimulus excitation [6.4], could be performed and compared with the ac EIS tests to search for variability in the sensing response / influence on bacterial biofilm.
- The effect of pulsative flow (peristaltic pump) on the electrochemical response could be investigated, for instance using static followed by hydrodynamic followed by static flow conditions.
- Corroborative electrochemical and biological studies could be carried out to establish a mode of action mechanism of 500 nM of the NO donor SNP (dosed on a biofilm surface) to understand in details the NO induced biofilm dispersal.
- The test matrix for the inhibition biocide strategy could be completed using NO donor SNP (25 and 500 nM, 50 µM, 50 and 100 mM), sodium hypochlorite (0.6, 2, 3, 5 and 10 mg L⁻¹ Cl₂), 0.1 and 1 % (w/v) tri(ethylene glycol) and sodium azide (10 mM), see Table 6.2.
### Table 6.2. Proposed test matrix for the biocide / biocide-free antifouling dosing strategy.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Biocide / biocide-free antifouling solution</th>
<th>Concentrations (in seawater)</th>
<th>Effects / predictions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NO donor SNP</td>
<td>25 nM</td>
<td>Bacterial biofilm dispersal / increase in planktonic cell density</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>500 nM</td>
<td>Bacterial biofilm dispersal / increase in planktonic cell density Optimum concentration (thesis)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>50 µM</td>
<td>Bacterial biofilm dispersal / increase in planktonic cell density</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>50 mM</td>
<td>Increase in biofilm biomass / decrease in planktonic biomass Converse effect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>100 mM</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sodium hypochlorite</td>
<td>0.6 mg L(^{-1}) Cl(_2)</td>
<td>Comparison with the performance of the BioGeorge(^{TM}) sensor (control of biofilm buildup by pulse-chlorination using a 30 min dosing) / do not induce biofilm sloughing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2 mg L(^{-1}) Cl(_2)</td>
<td>Presence of respiratory activity in biofilms / do not induce biofilm sloughing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3 mg L(^{-1}) Cl(_2)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5 mg L(^{-1}) Cl(_2)</td>
<td>Biofilm disruption</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10 mg L(^{-1}) Cl(_2)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tri(ethylene glycol)</td>
<td>0.1 % (w/v)</td>
<td>Inhibition of biofilm formation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1 % (w/v)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sodium azide</td>
<td>10 mM</td>
<td>Inhibition of enzymatic activity (shut down the respiratory activity resulting in bacterial cell death)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
This also applies for an operating (in-service) system, therefore:

- The hydrodynamic performance of the biofilm sensor could be characterised using a corrosion loop system and an in-service marine heat exchanger tube, where the most likely biofouling locations (e.g. stagnation zones) could be assessed for target based determination of sensing areas, i.e. the inside favourable biofilmed surfaces.
- Once a clear understanding on biocide inhibition strategy / antifouling solution is gained (Table 6.2), it could be tested in-service to establish the optimum concentration, duration and frequency of dosing at a given allowable flow rate.

### 6.2.2 Potential new routes for investigation

#### 6.2.2.1 Bacterial biofilm system

Probably the least controllable factor for this engineering investigation, the biological properties (Biological in Figure 6.1) are also tremendously fundamental:

- Studies on the gene expression for bacterial adhesion and EPS matrix secretion, and also natural dispersal could help to define suitable countermeasures for the control of bacterial biofilms.
- DNA and RNA analyses could be utilised to quantify bacterial growth and the corresponding metabolic activity, for instance to study the expression and specific activity of catalase.
- Investigation on bacterial selectivity and the influence of environmental variability, for example on the production of catalase isoforms, could be informative on the metabolic process involved during bacterial growth and extent.
- The influence of catalase on a bacterial biofilm, i.e. both changes in chemistry and stickiness of the EPS matrix, together with the corresponding electrochemical response, could be investigated.
- A mixed population of bacteria species (i.e. marine aerobic and / or anaerobic microbes) and fungi / yeasts, spores of macroalgae, and also protozoa could be used to understand their interactions on a metal surface.
- Analytical studies / modelling of bacterial biofilm attachment within a flow channel and inside pipe stagnation zones could help to support experimental tests.
• Quantification software, such as COMSTAT, ISA and PHLIP could be used to study the internal properties of a bacterial biofilm (e.g. diffusion, porosity and biovolume) for corroboration with electrochemical investigations in Chapter 5.
• A detailed description of bacterial biofilm spatial distribution and composition could be achieved using a corroboration of microscopy and spectroscopy techniques.

6.2.2.2 Bio-inspired engineering systems

In correlation with Section 6.2.2.1, greater understanding of the biological characteristics of competent bacterial biofilms could lead to the design and development of new biologically inspired sensors, actuators and engineering systems:

• Optical fibre devices utilising a modified biological membrane (with a bacterial biofilm) could be a great tool to study the optical properties of a bacterial biofilm, thus suggesting new sensing applications (Optical in Figure 6.1).
• The non-linear and viscoelastic behaviour of a bacterial biofilm could be investigated using a QCM and compared with the corresponding results in a flow cell system (Mechanical in Figure 6.1).
• SECM could be used for investigation on the redox activity within an aerobic bacterial biofilm and subsequent potential correlations with the catalase (Electrochemical in Figure 6.1).
References

References to Chapter 1


References to Chapter 2


References to Chapter 3


References to Chapter 4


References to Chapter 5


H.-C. Flemming, Biofouling in water systems – cases, causes and countermeasures, *Applied Microbiology and Biotechnology*, 59(6), 629-640 (2002).

**References to Chapter 6**


